■ The LKAS Conditions and Limitations

The system may not detect lane markings and therefore may not keep the vehicle in the middle of a lane under certain conditions, including the following:

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markings.
- Reflections on the interior of the front windshield.

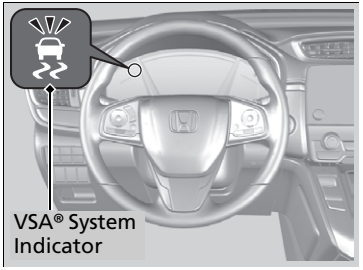
■ **Roadway conditions**
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognized as white lines (or yellow lines).
- When driving on roads with double lines.

■ **Vehicle conditions**
- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windshield is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windshield is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tire, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

Helps to stabilize the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine output and selectively applying the brakes.

■ VSA® Operation



When VSA® activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic system. You will also see the indicator blink.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

The VSA® may not function properly if tire types and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and types of tire, and the air pressures as specified.

When the VSA® indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

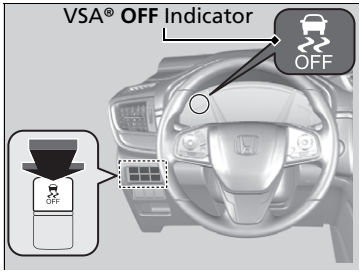
The VSA® indicator may come on after re-connecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

VSA® cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

The main function of the VSA® system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

VSA® On and Off



This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA® functionality/ features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

The traction control stops fully functioning, allowing the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. The VSA® OFF indicator will also come on and a message on the driver information interface* informs you that the mode is changed.

To restore VSA® functionality/features, press the (VSA® OFF) button until you hear a beep.

VSA® is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

With the button pressed, your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but VSA® traction and stability enhancement becomes less effective.

When the button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the button pressed if you are not able to free it without.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to press the button again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the button pressed (indicator on).

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

The VSA® OFF indicator may come on after re-connecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Agile Handling Assist

Lightly brakes each of the front and rear wheels, as needed, when you turn the steering wheel, and helps support the vehicle's stability and performance during cornering.

Agile Handling Assist

The agile handling assist cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When the VSA® system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the agile handling assist does not activate.

You may hear a sound coming from the engine compartment while the agile handling assist is activated. This is normal.

Blind spot information (BSI) System*

Is designed to detect vehicles in specified alert zones adjacent to your vehicle, particularly in harder to see areas commonly known as "blind spots."

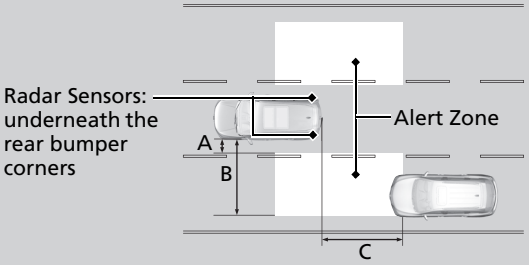
When the system detects vehicles approaching from behind in adjacent lanes, the appropriate indicator comes on for a few seconds, providing assistance when you change lanes.

■ How the system works

- The transmission is in D.
- Your vehicle speed is between 20 mph (32 km/h) and 100 mph (160 km/h)

Alert zone range

A: Approx. 1.6 ft. (0.5 m)
B: Approx. 10 ft. (3 m)
C: Approx. 10 ft. (3 m)



▶Blind spot information (BSI) System*

⚠WARNING

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to change lanes before doing so may result in a crash and serious injury or death.
Do not rely only on the blind spot information system when changing lanes.

Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes.

Important Safety Reminder
Like all assistance systems, BSI has limitations. Over reliance on BSI may result in a collision.

The system is for your convenience only. Even if an object is within the alert zone, the following situations may occur.

- The BSI alert indicator may not come on due to obstruction (splashes, etc.) even without the **Blind Spot Info Not Available** MID appearing.
- The BSI alert indicator may come on even with the message appearing.

The BSI alert indicator may not come on under the following conditions:

- A vehicle does not stay in the alert zone for more than two seconds.
- A vehicle is parked in a side lane.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle you are passing is greater than 6 mph (10 km/h).
- An object not detected by the radar sensors approaches or passes your vehicle.

* Not available on all models

Continued

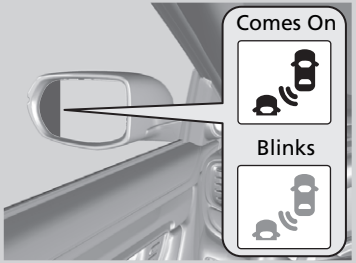
■ When the system detects a vehicle

BSI Alert Indicator: Located on the outside rearview mirror on both sides.

■Comes on when
- A vehicle enters the alert zone from behind to overtake you with a speed difference of no more than 31 mph (50 km/h) from your vehicle.
- You pass a vehicle with a speed difference of no more than 12 mph (20 km/h).

■Blinks and the beeper sounds when

You move the turn signal lever in the direction of the detected vehicle. The beeper sounds three times.



Blind spot information (BSI) System*

You can change the setting for BSI.
➔ **Customized Features** P. 337

Turn the system off when towing a trailer.
The system may not work properly for the following reasons:
- The added mass tilts the vehicle and changes the radar coverage.
- The trailer itself can be detected by the radar sensors, causing the BSI alert indicators to come on.

BSI may be adversely affected when:
- Objects (guard rails, poles, trees, etc,.) are detected.
- An object that does not reflect radio waves well, such as a motorcycle, is in the alert zone.
- Driving on a curved road.
- A vehicle is moving from a far lane to the adjacent lane.
- The system picks up external electrical interference.
- The rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed.
- The orientation of the sensors has been changed.
- In bad weather (Heavy rain, snow, and fog).
- Making a turn at an intersection.
- Driving on a bumpy road.
- Making a short turn that slightly tilts the vehicle.

 * Not available on all models

Blind spot information (BSI) System*

For proper BSI use:

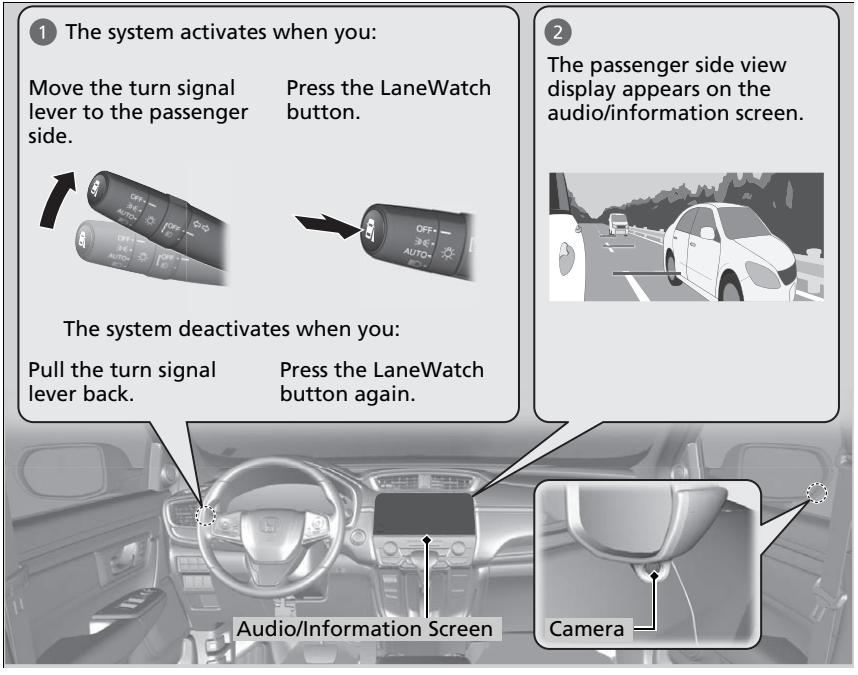
- Always keep the rear bumper corner area clean.
- Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.
- Take your vehicle to a dealer if you need the rear bumper corner area or the radar sensors to be repaired, or the rear bumper corner area is strongly impacted.

The system does not operate when in R.

* Not available on all models

LaneWatch™*

LaneWatch is an assistance system that allows you to check the passenger side rear areas displayed on the audio/information screen when the turn signal is activated to the passenger's side. A camera in the passenger side door mirror monitors these areas and allows you to check for vehicle, in addition to your visual check and use of the passenger door mirror. You can also keep the system on for your convenience while driving.



LaneWatch™*

⚠WARNING

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to change lanes before doing so may result in a crash and serious injury or death.

Do not rely only on LaneWatch while driving.

Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes.

Important Safety Reminder
Like all assistance systems, LaneWatch has limitations. Over reliance on LaneWatch may result in a collision.

The LaneWatch function can be affected by weather, lighting (including headlights and low sun angle), ambient darkness, camera condition, and loading.

The LaneWatch may not provide the intended display of traffic to the side and rear under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle's suspension has been altered, changing the height of the vehicle.
- Your tires are over or under inflated.
- Your tires or wheels are of varied size or construction.

* Not available on all models

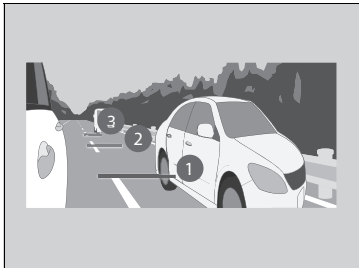
■ Customizing the LaneWatch settings

You can customize the following items using the audio/information screen.

- **Show with Turn Signal**: Selects whether LaneWatch monitor comes on when you operate the turn signal light lever.
- **Display Time after Turn Signal Off**: Changes the remaining Lane Watch display time after you pull the turn signal lever back.
- **Reference Line**: Selects whether the reference lines appear on the LaneWatch monitor.
- **Display**: Adjusts display settings.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 337

■ Reference Lines



Three lines that appear on the screen can give an idea of how far the vehicles or objects on the screen are from your vehicle, respectively. If an object is near line 1 (in red), it indicates that it is close to your vehicle whereas an object near line 3 farther away.

LaneWatch™*

The LaneWatch camera view is restricted. Its unique lens makes objects on the screen look slightly different from what they are.

LaneWatch display does not come on when the shift lever is in R.

For proper LaneWatch operation:

- The camera is located in the passenger side door mirror. Always keep this area clean. If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.
- Do not cover the camera lens with labels or stickers of any kind.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

Reference Lines

The area around the reference line 1 (red) is very close to your vehicle. As always, make sure to visually confirm the safety of a lane change before changing lanes.

The distance between your vehicle and lines 1, 2 and 3 on the screen vary depending on road conditions and vehicle loading. For example, the reference lines on the screen may seem to appear closer than the actual distances when the rear of your vehicle is more heavily loaded.

Consult a dealer if:

- The passenger side door mirror, or area around it is severely impacted, resulting in changing the camera angle.
- The LaneWatch display does not come on at all.

* Not available on all models

Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System™*

When the system senses a loss of front wheel traction, it automatically transfers some power to the rear wheels. This allows you to utilize all available traction and may increase mobility.

You still need to exercise the same care when accelerating, steering, and braking that you would in a two wheel drive vehicle.

If you excessively spin all four wheels and overheat the AWD system, only the front wheels receive power. Stop until the system cools down.

Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System™*

NOTICE

Do not continuously spin the front tires of your vehicle. Continuously spinning the front tires can cause transmission or rear differential damage.

The AWD system may not function properly if tire type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tire, and the air pressures as specified.

Tire and Wheel Replacement P. 587

 * Not available on all models

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tire, the TPMS on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tire while you are driving to determine if one or more tires are significantly under-inflated. This will cause the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator to come on and a message to appear on the driver information interface*.

TPMS Calibration

You must start TPMS calibration every time you:
- Adjust the pressure in one or more tires.
- Rotate the tires.
- Replace one or more tires.

Before calibrating the TPMS:
- Set the cold tire pressure in all four tires.
  ➡ **Checking Tires** P. 581

Make sure:
- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The shift lever is in P.
- The ignition switch is in ON II*1.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The system does not monitor the tires when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tire pressure and can trigger the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator to come on.

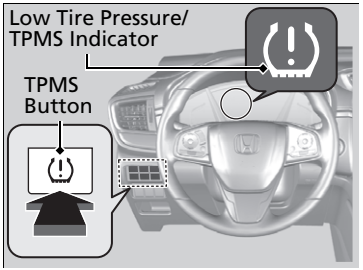
Tire pressure checked and inflated in:
- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become over-inflated in warmer weather.

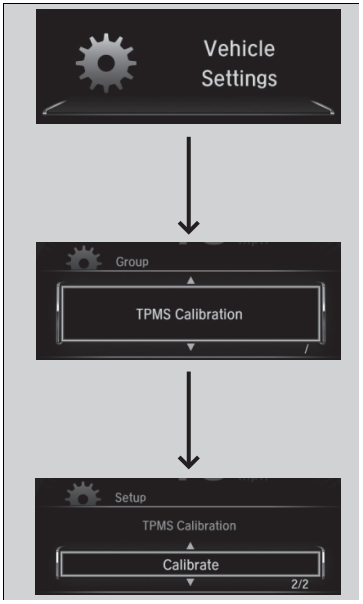
The low tire pressure indicator will not come on as a result of over inflation.

The TPMS may not function properly if tire type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tire.
➡ **Checking and Maintaining Tires** P. 581

The low tire pressure/TPMS indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:
- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Snow chains are used.

The low tire pressure/TPMS indicator may come on under the following conditions:
- A compact spare tire is used.
- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tires, such as when towing a trailer, than the condition at calibration.
- Snow chains are used.





Models with information display

Press and hold the TPMS button until the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator blinks twice, indicating the calibration process has begun.

- If the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator does not blink, confirm the above conditions then press and hold the TPMS button again.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

Models with color audio system

Models with driver information interface

You can calibrate the system from the customized features on the driver information interface.

1. Press the [i] then ▲/▼ button to select ⚙ (**Vehicle Settings**), then press the **ENTER** button.
   ▶ **TPMS Calibration** appears on the display.
2. Press the **ENTER** button.
   ▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **Cancel** or **Calibrate**.
3. Press the ▲/▼ button and select **Calibrate**, then press the **ENTER** button.
   ▶ **Calibration Started** screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.

- If the **Calibration Failed to Start** message appears, repeat steps 2-3.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

TPMS Calibration

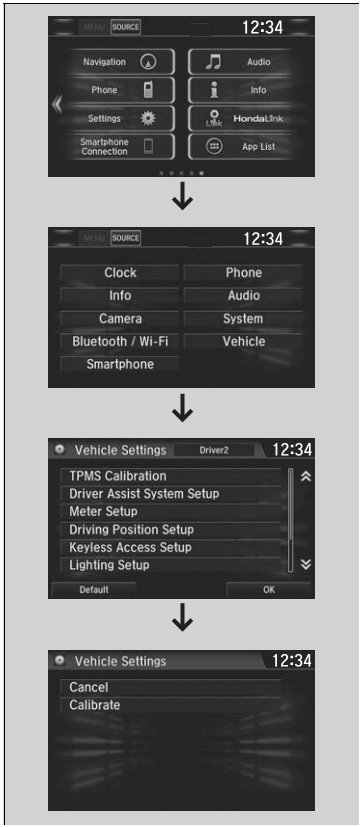
- TPMS cannot be calibrated if a compact spare tire is installed.
- The calibration process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 30-65 mph (48-105 km/h).
- During calibration, if the ignition is turned off then on again, and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, the low tire pressure indicator may come on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the calibration process is not yet complete.

If the snow chains are installed, remove them before calibrating the TPMS.

If the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tires are installed, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tires be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.

The low tire pressure/TPMS indicator may come on after re-connecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



Models with Display Audio

You can calibrate the system from the customized feature on the audio/information screen.

1. Turn the ignition switch to ON II*1.
2. Select HOME.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Vehicle**.
5. Select **TPMS Calibration**.
6. Select **Cancel** or **Calibrate**.
   ▶ When the calibration is complete, the display returns to the customization menu screen.

- If the **Unable to initialize TPMS.** message appears, repeat steps 4-5.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

U.S. models

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) - Required Federal Explanation

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label.

(If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale



when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure.

Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

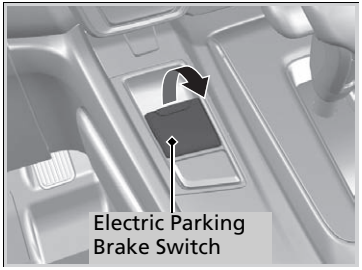
TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Brake System

■ Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parked. When the parking brake is applied, you can manually or automatically release it.

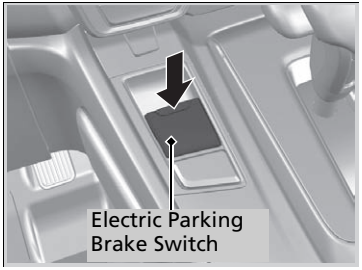


■ To apply

The electric parking brake can be applied any time the vehicle has battery, no matter which position the ignition switch*1 is in.

Pull the electric parking brake switch up gently and securely.

▶ The parking brake indicator comes on.



■ To release

The vehicle must be ON II*1 in order to release the electric parking brake.

1. Depress the brake pedal.

2. Press the electric parking brake switch.

▶ The parking brake indicator goes off.

Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle start slowly and smoothly when facing down hill on steep hills.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Parking Brake

You may hear the electric parking brake system operating from the rear wheel area when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

You cannot apply or release the parking brake if the battery goes dead.

➡ **Jump Starting** P. 613

If you pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch while driving, the brakes on all four wheels are applied by the VSA system until the vehicle come to a stop. The electric parking brake then applies, and the switch should be released.

In the following situations, the parking brake automatically operates.

- When the vehicle stops with the automatic brake hold system activated for more than 10 minutes.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped and the brake hold system is applied.
- When the engine is turned off while the brake hold system is applied.
- When there is a problem with the brake hold system while brake hold is applied.

Models with ACC with LSF

- When the vehicle is stops more than 10 minutes while ACC with LSF is activated.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with LSF.
- When the engine is turned off while ACC with LSF is activated.

■ Automatic parking brake feature operation

If the automatic parking brake feature has been activated:

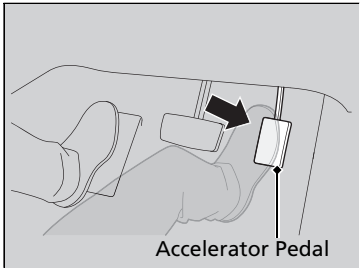
- The parking brake is applied automatically when you turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0*1.
- To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake indicator is on.

Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature P. 510

■ To release automatically

Use the accelerator pedal to release the parking brake when you are starting the vehicle facing uphill, or in a traffic jam.

Depressing the accelerator pedal releases the parking brake.



Gently depress the accelerator pedal.

▶ The parking brake indicator goes off.

The parking brake automatically releases as you depress the accelerator pedal when:

- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The engine is running.
- The transmission is not in P or N.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Continued

Parking Brake

If the parking brake cannot be released automatically, release it manually.

When the vehicle is traveling uphill, the accelerator pedal may need to be pressed farther to automatically release the electric parking brake.

The parking brake cannot be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Malfunction indicator lamp
- Transmission indicator

The parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Brake system indicator
- VSA® system indicator
- **ABS** indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator

■ Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

With the ignition switch is in ON (II)*1, carry out the following steps to either activate or deactivate the automatic parking brake feature.

1. Shift the select lever to (P).
2. Without depressing the brake pedal, pull up and release the parking brake switch.
   ▶ Check that the parking brake indicator has come on.
3. Pull up and hold the parking brake switch. When you hear a beeping sound, release the switch and within 3 seconds pull up and hold the switch again.
4. When you hear a sound indicating that the procedure is completed, release the switch.
   ▶ Two beeps indicates that the feature has been activated.
   ▶ One beep indicates that the feature has been deactivated.
   ▶ When you have completed activating the feature, the parking brake will remain applied after you turn off the engine.
   ▶ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake indicator is on.

If you need to temporarily deactivate the feature for when putting your vehicle through a conveyor type car wash or when having your vehicle towed. You can follow the procedure explained below.

1. Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
2. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK (0)*1 and then within 2 seconds push down the parking brake switch.
   ▶ Activation and deactivation settings for the feature will not be affected.
   ▶ Before temporarily deactivating the feature, make sure to first turn off both ACC with LSF and the automatic brake hold system.
   ▶ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake indicator is on.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Parking brake system

In cold climates, the parking brake may freeze in place if applied.

When parking the vehicle, chock the wheels and make sure the automatic parking brake feature is deactivated.

Also, when putting your vehicle through a conveyor-type car wash or when having your vehicle towed, deactivate the automatic parking brake feature and leave the parking brake released.

Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

➔ **Brake Assist System** P. 515
➔ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 514

Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, this is caused by the brake wear indicator rubbing on the brake rotor and indicates that the brake pads need to be replaced. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer. If you hear only an occasional squeak or squeal when you initially apply the brake pedal, this may be normal and caused by high frequency vibration of the brake pads against the rotating brake disc.

Constantly using the brake pedal while going down a long hill builds up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply engine braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and downshifting to a lower gear/speed position. With manual transmission use a lower gear for greater engine braking.

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

Whenever the brakes are activated by CMBS™* or another system that automatically controls braking, the brake pedal is depressed and released in accordance with braking function.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Automatic Brake Hold

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until the accelerator pedal is pressed. You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

■Turning on the system

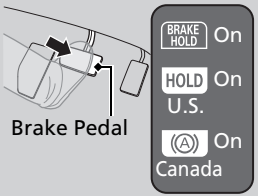


Automatic Brake Hold Button

Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the engine. Press the automatic brake hold button.

- The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on.

■Activating the system

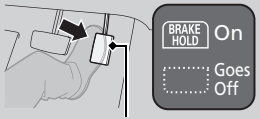


Brake Pedal

Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop. The shift lever must not be in P or R.

- The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes.
- Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

■Canceling the system



Accelerator Pedal

Depress the accelerator pedal while the shift lever is in a position other than P or N. The brake hold is disengaged and the vehicle starts to move.

- The automatic brake hold indicator goes off. The system releases the brake automatically.

Automatic Brake Hold

⚠WARNING

Activating the automatic brake hold system on steep hills or slippery roads may still allow the vehicle to move if you remove your foot from the brake pedal.

If a vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Never activate the automatic brake hold system or rely on it to keep a vehicle from moving when stopped on a steep hill or slippery roads.

⚠WARNING

Using the automatic brake hold system to park the vehicle may result in the vehicle unexpectedly moving.

If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never leave the vehicle when braking is temporarily kept by automatic brake hold and always park the vehicle by putting the transmission in P and applying the parking brake.

■ **The system automatically cancels when:**
- You engage the parking brake.
- You depress the brake pedal and move the shift lever to P or R.

Under the following conditions, the system automatically cancels, and the parking brake is applied:
- Braking is kept for more than 10 minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The engine is turned off.
- There is a problem with automatic brake hold system.

■ **Turning off the automatic brake hold system**



While the system is on, press the automatic brake hold button again.

▶ The automatic brake hold system indicator goes off.

If you want to turn off automatic brake hold while the system is in operation, press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.

Automatic Brake Hold

While the system is activated, you can turn off the engine or park the vehicle through the same procedure as you normally do.

When Stopped P. 526

Whether the system is on, or the system is activated, the automatic brake hold turns off once the engine is off.

Turning off the automatic brake hold system

Make sure to turn off the automatic brake hold system before using an automated car wash.

You may hear an operating noise if the vehicle moves while the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

Helps prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as "stomp and steer."

■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS may activate when you depress the brake pedal when driving on:
- Wet or snow covered roads.
- Roads paved with stone.
- Roads with uneven surfaces, such as potholes, cracks, manholes, etc.

When the vehicle speed goes under 6 mph (10 km/h), the ABS stops.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use an incorrect tire type and size.

When the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system.
While normal braking is not affected, there is a possibility of the ABS not operating. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS does not reduce the time or distance it takes to stop the vehicle. It only helps with steering control during hard braking.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more stopping distance than a vehicle without the ABS:
- When driving on rough road surfaces, including when driving on uneven surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- When tire chains are installed.

The following may be observed with the ABS system:
- Motor sounds coming from the engine compartment when the brakes are applied, or when system checks are being performed after the engine has been started and while vehicle is accelerates.
- Brake pedal and/or the vehicle body vibration when ABS activates.

These vibrations and sounds are normal to ABS systems and are no cause for concern.

Brake Assist System

Designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

■ Brake assist system operation

Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*

Can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle or a pedestrian detected in front of yours. The CMBS™ is designed to alert you when a potential collision is determined, as well as to reduce your vehicle speed to help minimize collision severity when a collision is deemed unavoidable.

Important Safety Reminder

The CMBS™ is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collision nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

The CMBS™ may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:

CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations P. 522

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

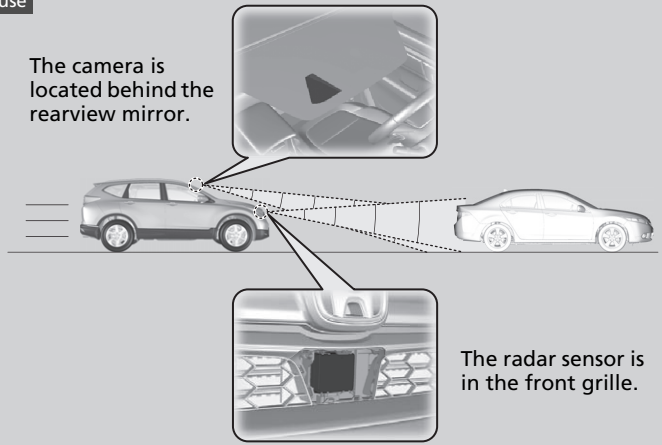
Front Sensor Camera* P. 465

Be careful not to have radar sensor cover strongly impacted.

 * Not available on all models

■ How the system works

When to use



The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 3 mph (5 km/h) and there is a vehicle in front of you.

The CMBS™ activates when:

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian detected in front of you becomes about 3 mph (5 km/h) and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle speed is about 62 mph (100 km/h) or less and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with:

- Vehicles detected in front of you that are stationary, oncoming, or traveling in your same direction.
- A pedestrian who is detected in front of you.

- Your vehicle speed is above 62 mph (100 km/h), and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with a vehicle detected in front of you traveling in your same direction.

How the system works

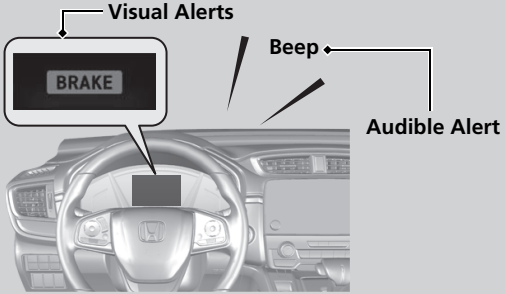
When the CMBS™ activates, it may automatically apply the brake. It will be canceled when your vehicle stops or a potential collision is not determined.

Continued

■ When the system activates

The system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)



At system's earliest collision alert stage, you can change the distance (**Long**/**Normal**/**Short**) between vehicles at which alerts will come on through multi-information display setting options.

Customized Features P. 337

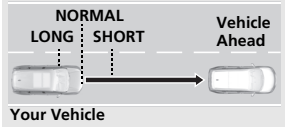
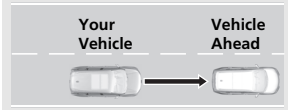
How the system works

The camera in the CMBS™ is also designed to detect pedestrians.
However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions.
Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

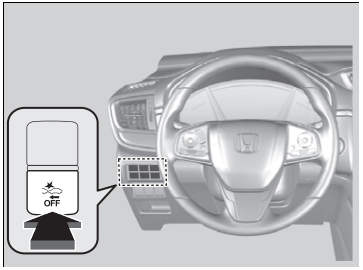
CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations P. 522

Collision Alert Stages

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS™ may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

Distance between vehicles		CMBS™		
		The sensors detect a vehicle	Audible & Visual WARNINGS	Braking
Stage one		There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.	When in **Long**, visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in **Normal** setting, and in **Short**, at a shorter distance than in **Normal**.	—
Stage two		The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.	Visual and audible alerts.	Lightly applied
Stage three		The CMBS™ determines that a collision is unavoidable.		Forcefully applied

■ CMBS™ On and Off



Press this button until the beeper sounds to switch the system on or off.

When the CMBS™ is off:

- The CMBS™ indicator in the instrument panel comes on.
- A message on the driver information interface reminds you that the system is off.

The CMBS™ is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*

The CMBS™ may automatically shut off, and the CMBS™ indicator will come and stay on under certain conditions.

CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations P. 522

When the CMBS™ is activated, it will continue to operate even if the accelerator pedal is partially depressed. However, it will be canceled if the accelerator pedal is deeply depressed.

The CMBS™ indicator may come on after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

 * Not available on all models

With Little Chance of a Collision

The CMBS™ may activate even when you are aware of a vehicle ahead of you, or when there is no vehicle ahead. Some examples of this are:

When Passing

Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.

At an intersection

Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.

On a curve

When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where an oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

Through a low bridge at high speed

You drive under a low or narrow bridge at high speed.

Speed bumps, road work sites, train tracks, roadside objects, etc.

You drive over speed bumps, steel road plates, etc., or your vehicle approaches train tracks or roadside objects [such as a traffic sign and guard rail] on a curve or, when parking, stationary vehicles and walls.

Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*

For the CMBS™ to work properly:

Always keep the radar sensor cover clean.

Never use chemical solvents or polishing powder for cleaning the sensor cover. Clean it with water or a mild detergent.

Do not paint, or apply any coverings or paint to radar sensor area. This can impact CMBS™ operation.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g. the warning message appears too frequently).

If the front of the vehicle is impacted in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:

- The vehicle mounted onto a bump, curb, chock, embankment, etc.
- You drive the vehicle where the water is deep.
- Your vehicle has a frontal collision.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the CMBS™ indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the CMBS™ functions.

Front Sensor Camera* P. 465

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between objects and the background.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as vehicles and pedestrians.
- Reflections on the interior of the front windshield.

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast on a snowy or wet roadway).
- Driving on curvy, winding, or undulating roads.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.

CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations

Do not put a sticker on the radar sensor cover or replace the radar sensor cover.

If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the radar sensor cover is strongly impacted, turn off the system by pressing the CMBS™ off button and take your vehicle to a dealer.

 * Not available on all models

■ **Vehicle conditions**

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windshield is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windshield is fogged.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tire, etc.).
- When tire chains are installed.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- When the radar sensor in the front grille gets dirty.

Continued

■ **Detection limitations**

- A vehicle or pedestrian suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you is too short.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you at high speed.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian in front of you is significantly large.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved, winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Another vehicle suddenly comes in front of you at an intersection, etc.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.
- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.
- When the lead vehicle suddenly slows down.

Limitations applicable to pedestrian detection only

- When there is a group of people in front of your vehicle walking together side by side.
- Surrounding conditions or belongings of the pedestrian alter the pedestrian's shape, preventing the system from recognizing that the person is a pedestrian.
- When the pedestrian is slouching or squatting.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 3 feet (1 meter) or taller than about 7 feet (2 meter) in height.
- When a pedestrian blends in with the background.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, or when their hands or raised or they are running.
- When several pedestrians are walking ahead in a group.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify that a pedestrian is present due to an unusual shape (holding luggage, body position, size).

■ Automatic shutoff

CMBS™ may automatically shut itself off and the CMBS™ indicator comes and stays on when:

- The temperature inside the system is high.
- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- An abnormal tire condition is detected (wrong tire size, flat tire, etc.).
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windshield, gets dirty.

Once the conditions that caused CMBS™ to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. With the brake pedal depressed, pull up the electric parking brake switch slowly, but fully.
3. Move the shift lever from D to P.
4. Turn off the engine.
   ▶ The parking brake indicator goes off in about 15 seconds.

Always confirm the electric parking brake is set, in particular if you are parked on an incline.

Parking Your Vehicle

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber.
Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

When Stopped

NOTICE

The following can damage the transmission:

- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Holding the vehicle in place when facing uphill by depressing the accelerator pedal.
- Moving the shift lever into P before the vehicle stops completely.

In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

Cross Traffic Monitor*

Monitors the rear corner areas using the radar sensors when reversing, and alerts you if a vehicle approaching from a rear corner is detected.

The system is convenient when you are backing out of a parking space.

Cross Traffic Monitor*

⚠CAUTION

Cross Traffic Monitor cannot detect all approaching vehicles and may not detect an approaching vehicle at all.

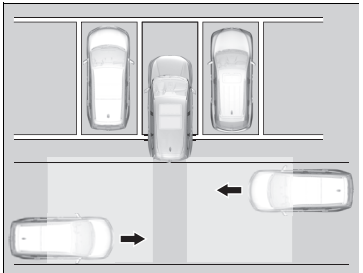
Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to back up the vehicle before doing so may result in a collision.

Do not solely rely on the system when reversing; always also use your mirrors, and look behind and to the sides of your vehicle before reversing.

* Not available on all models

Continued

How the System Works



Radar sensors:
Underneath the rear bumper corners

The system activates when:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The Cross Traffic Monitor system is turned on.
  Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off P. 530
- The transmission is in R.
- Your vehicle is moving at 3 mph (5 km/h) or lower.

When a vehicle is detected approaching from a rear corner, Cross Traffic Monitor alerts you with a buzzer and a displayed warning.

The system will not detect a vehicle that approaches from directly behind your vehicle, nor will it provide alerts about a detected vehicle when it moves directly behind your vehicle.

The system does not detect or provide alerts for a vehicle that is moving away from your vehicle, and it may not detect or alert for pedestrians, bicycles, or stationary objects.

Cross Traffic Monitor*

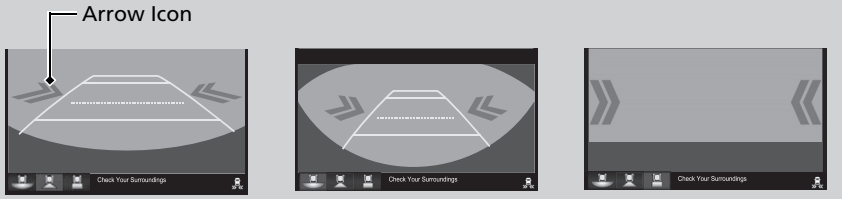
Cross Traffic Monitor may not detect an approaching vehicle, or may delay alerting you under the following conditions:

- An obstacle, such as another vehicle and a wall, near your vehicle's rear bumper, is blocking the radar sensor's scope.
- Your vehicle is moving at the speed of about 3 mph (5 km/h) or higher.
- A vehicle is approaching at the speed other than between about 6 mph (10 km/h) and 16 mph (25 km/h).
- The system picks up external interference such as other radar sensors from another vehicle or strong radio wave transmitted from a facility nearby.
- Either corner of the rear bumper is covered with snow, ice, mud or dirt.
- When there is bad weather.
- Your vehicle is on an incline.
- Your vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load in the rear.
- Your vehicle is reversing towards a wall, a pole, a vehicle, and so on.
- The rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

For proper operation, always keep the rear bumper corner area clean.
Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.

* Not available on all models

When the System Detects a Vehicle



Normal View | Wide View | Top Down View

An arrow icon appears on the side a vehicle is approaching on the audio/information screen.

When the System Detects a Vehicle

If the [icon] on the lower right changes to [icon] when the transmission is in [R], mud snow or ice may have accumulated in the vicinity of the sensor. Check the bumper corners for any obstructions, and thoroughly clean the area if necessary.

If the [icon] comes on when the transmission is in [R], there may be a problem with the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

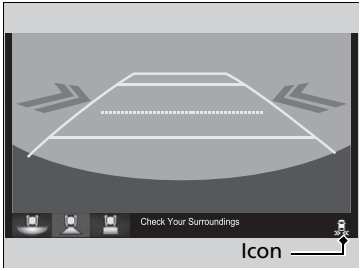
If the display remains the same with the transmission in [R], there may be a problem with the rear camera system and the Cross Traffic Monitor system.
Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Continued

■ Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off

You can switch on and off the system using the audio/information screen.

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Camera**.
4. Select **Cross Traffic Monitor**.
5. Select **On** or **Off**, then select **OK**.

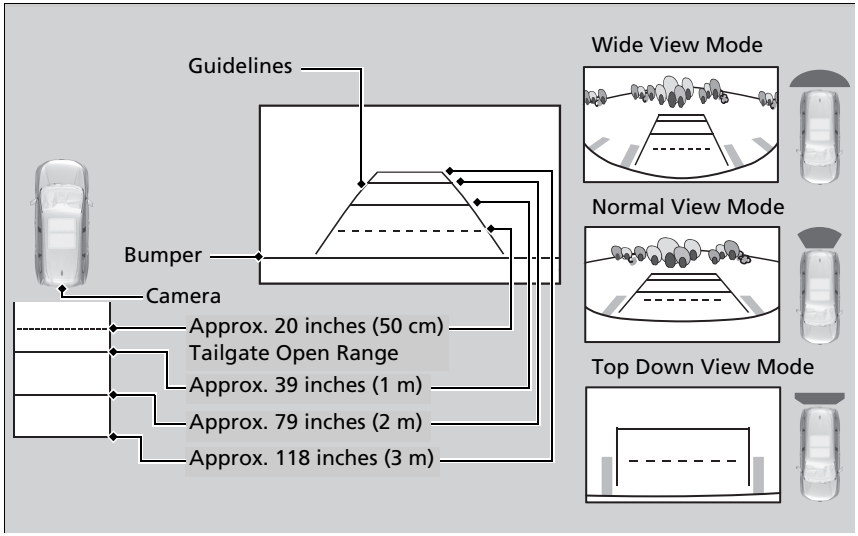


The system can also be turned on and off on the audio/information screen by pressing the CTM icon.

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view.
The display automatically changes to a rear view when the shift lever is moved to R.

Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area



About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline*** settings.
Customized Features P. 337

Fixed Guideline
On: Guidelines appear when you shift into R.
Off: Guidelines do not appear.
Dynamic Guidelines*
On: Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.
Off: Guidelines do not move.

* Not available on all models

Continued

You can view three different camera angles on the rearview display.

Models with color audio system

Press the selector knob to switch the angle.

Models with Display Audio

Touch the appropriate icon to switch the angle.

 : Wide view

 : Normal view

 : Top down view

All models

- If the last used viewing mode was Wide or Normal, the same mode is selected the next time you shift into R.
- If Top View was last used before you turned off the engine, Wide mode is selected next time you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1 and shift to R.
- If Top View was last used more than 10 seconds after you shift from R, Wide mode is selected the next time you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Fuel Information

■ **Fuel recommendation**

Unleaded gasoline, pump octane number 87 or higher

Use of lower octane gasoline can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

■ **Top tier detergent gasoline**

Because the level of detergency and additives in gasoline vary in the market, Honda endorses the use of "TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline" where available to help maintain the performance and reliability of your vehicle. TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline meets a new gasoline standard jointly established by leading automotive manufacturers to meet the needs of today's advanced engines.

Qualifying gasoline retailers will, in most cases, identify their gasoline as having met "TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline" standards at the retail location. This fuel is guaranteed to contain the proper level of detergent additives and be free of metallic additives. The proper level of detergent additives, and absence of harmful metallic additives in gasoline, help avoid build-up of deposits in your engine and emission control system.

For further important fuel-related information for your vehicle, or on information on gasoline that does not contain MMT, visit *www.hondacars.com.* In Canada, visit *www.honda.ca* for additional information on gasoline. For more information on top tier gasoline, visit *www.toptiergas.com*.

■ **Fuel tank capacity: 14 US gal (53 liters)**

Fuel Information

NOTICE

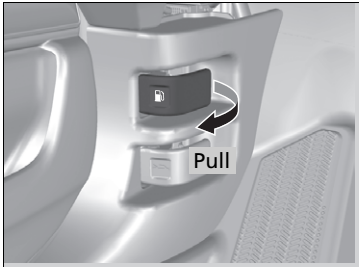
We recommend quality gasoline containing detergent additives that help prevent fuel system and engine deposits. In addition, in order to maintain good performance, fuel economy, and emissions control, we strongly recommend the use of gasoline that does NOT contain harmful manganese-based fuel additives such as MMT, if such gasoline is available.

Use of gasoline with these additives may adversely affect performance, and cause the malfunction indicator lamp on your instrument panel to come on. If this happens, contact a dealer for service.

Some gasoline today is blended with oxygenates such as ethanol. Your vehicle is designed to operate on oxygenated gasoline containing up to 15% ethanol by volume. Do not use gasoline containing methanol. If you notice any undesirable operating symptoms, try another service station or switch to another brand of gasoline.

How to Refuel

Your fuel tank is not equipped with a fuel filler cap. You can insert the filler nozzle directly into the filler neck. The tank seals itself again when you pull out the filler nozzle.



1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Pull on the fuel fill door release handle under the lower left corner of the dashboard.
   ▶ The fuel fill door opens.

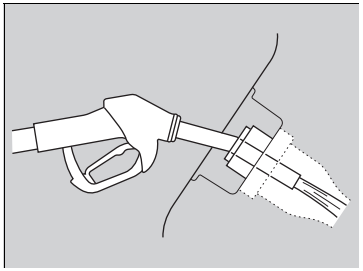
How to Refuel

⚠WARNING

Gasoline is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- **Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.**
- **Handle fuel only outdoors.**
- **Wipe up spills immediately.**

The fuel filler opening is designed to accept only service station filler nozzles for refueling. Use of smaller diameter tubes (e.g., those used to siphon fuel for other uses) or other non-service station devices can damage the area in and around the filler opening.



4. Place the end of the filler nozzle on the lower part of filler opening, then insert it slowly and fully.
- ▶ Make sure that the end of the filler nozzle goes down along with the filler pipe.
- ▶ Keep the filler nozzle level.
- ▶ When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically.
- ▶ After filling, wait about five seconds before removing the filler nozzle.

5. Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

How to Refuel

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

If the filler nozzle keeps turning off when the tank is not full, there may be a problem with the pump's fuel vapor recovery system. Try filling at another pump. If this does not fix the problem, consult a dealer.

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.

If you have to refuel your vehicle from a portable container, use the funnel provided with your vehicle.

Refueling From a Portable Fuel Container
P. 634

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO_2 Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO_2 emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

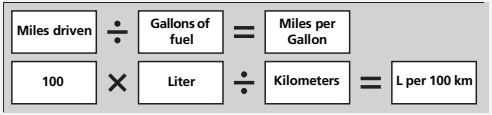
Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Always maintain your vehicle in accordance with the messages displayed on the information display*/driver information interface*.

- Use the recommended viscosity engine oil, displaying the API Certification Seal.
- Maintain the specified tire pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess cargo.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO_2 Emissions

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.



In Canada, posted fuel economy numbers are established following a simulated test. For more information on how this test is performed, please visit *http://oee.nrcan.gc.ca/*

* Not available on all models

Handling Precautions

The turbocharger is a high-precision device to obtain greater horsepower by delivering a large volume of compressed air into the engine using a turbine driven by the engine's exhaust gas pressure.

- When the engine is cold just after starting, avoid revving the engine or sudden acceleration.

- Always replace the engine oil and engine oil filter according to the Maintenance Minder. The turbine rotates at very high speeds over 100,000 rpm and its temperature reaches over 1,292°F (700°C). It is lubricated and cooled by engine oil. If you fail to replace the engine oil and filter at the scheduled distance or interval, deteriorated engine oil may cause failure such as sticking and abnormal noise of the turbine bearing.

Turbo Engine Vehicle*

The scheduled maintenance intervals for replacing the filter is indicated on the information display*/ driver information interface*. Follow the information of when to replace them.

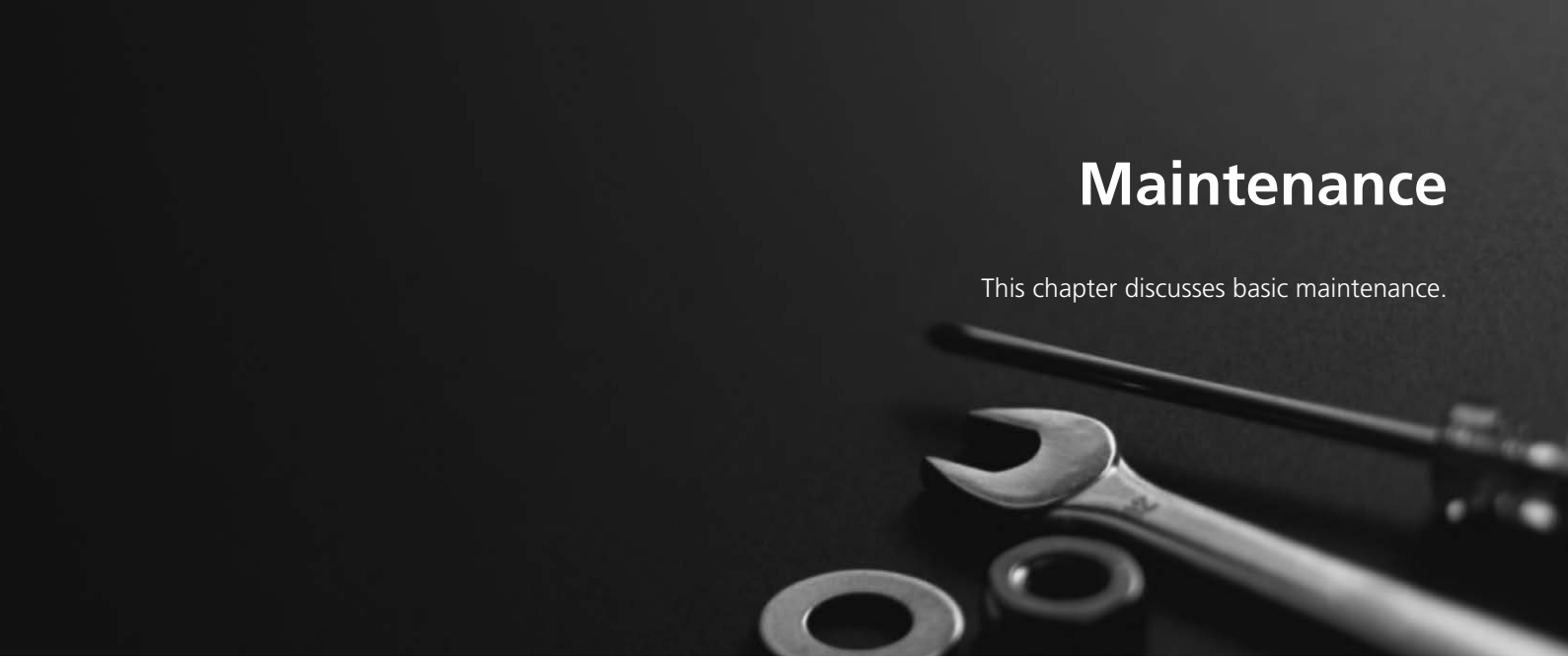
➡ **Maintenance Minder™** P. 543

The temperature gauge pointer is at the H mark when you restart the engine after driving under high load conditions such as at high speed or in hilly terrain. This is normal. The gauge goes down after you idle or drive the vehicle for about one minute.

* Not available on all models

Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.



Before Performing Maintenance
Inspection and Maintenance 540
Safety When Performing Maintenance...541
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service 542
Maintenance Minder™ 543
Maintenance Under the Hood
Maintenance Items Under the Hood.. 553
Opening the Hood 555
Recommended Engine Oil 556
Oil Check 557
Adding Engine Oil 559
Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter ...560
Engine Coolant 563
Transmission Fluid 567
Brake Fluid 568
Refilling Window Washer Fluid 569
Replacing Light Bulbs 570
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades... 577
Checking and Maintaining Tires
Checking Tires 581
Tire and Loading Information Label 582
Tire Labeling 582
DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles).. 584
Wear Indicators 586
Tire Service Life 586
Tire and Wheel Replacement 587
Tire Rotation 588
Winter Tires 589
Battery 590
Remote Transmitter Care
Replacing the Button Battery 592
Climate Control System Maintenance .. 594
Cleaning
Interior Care 595
Exterior Care 597
Accessories and Modifications 600

Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. (Note, however, that service at a dealer is not mandatory to keep your warranties in effect.)

■ Types of Inspection and Maintenance

■ Daily inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

■ Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
  ➡ **Checking the Brake Fluid** P. 568
- Check the tire pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
  ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Tires** P. 581
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
  ➡ **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 570
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
  ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 577

Inspection and Maintenance

U.S. models

Maintenance, replacement, or repair of emissions control devices and systems may be done by any automotive repair establishment or individuals using parts that are "certified" to EPA standards.

According to state and federal regulations, failure to perform maintenance on the maintenance main items marked with # will not void your emissions warranties. However, all maintenance services should be performed in accordance with the intervals indicated by the information display*/driver information interface*.

➡ **Maintenance Service Items** P. 545, 550

If you want to perform complex maintenance tasks that require more skills and tools, you can purchase a subscription to the Service Express website at *www.techinfo.honda.com*.

➡ **Authorized Manuals** P. 646

If you want to perform maintenance yourself, make sure that you have the necessary tools and skills first. After performing maintenance, update the records in the separate maintenance booklet.

* Not available on all models

Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here.
However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

■ Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the hood.
  ▶ Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite them causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not gasoline.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
  ▶ Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

■ Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
  ▶ Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
  ▶ Make sure to let the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
  ▶ Do not start the engine unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.

Safety When Performing Maintenance

⚠WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations according to the schedules in this owner's manual.

⚠WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

The use of Honda genuine parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda genuine parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

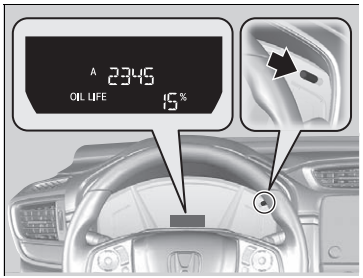
Select the Maintenance Minder to see maintenance items that are due soon and to see the percentage of life remaining in the engine oil.

When the engine oil life is less than 15%, a Maintenance Minder message will appear every time you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, reminding you to bring your vehicle to a dealer for service.

Models with information display

To Use Maintenance Minder™

Displaying the Maintenance Minder Information



1. Turn the ignition switch to ON II.
2. Press the (**TRIP**) knob repeatedly until the engine oil life appears on the information display.

The Maintenance Minder indicator ( ) stays on in the instrument panel after the engine oil life becomes **0%**. Have the indicated maintenance done by a dealer immediately.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Continued

Displaying the Maintenance Minder Information

Based on the engine operating conditions, the remaining engine oil life is calculated and displayed as a percentage.

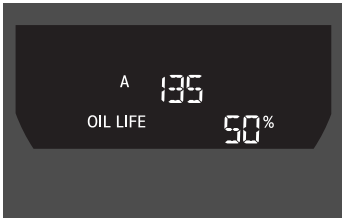
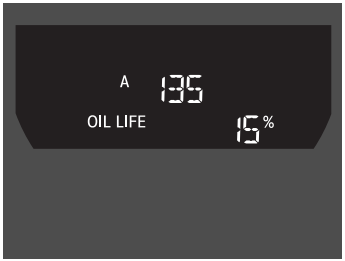
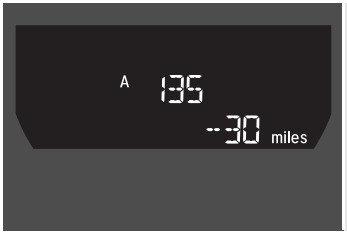
Displayed Engine Oil Life (%)	Calculated Engine Oil Life (%)
100	100 to 91
90	90 to 81
80	80 to 71
70	70 to 61
60	60 to 51
50	50 to 41
40	40 to 31
30	30 to 21
20	20 to 16
15	15 to 11
10	10 to 6
5	5 to 1
0	0

There is a list of maintenance main and sub items you can view on the information display.

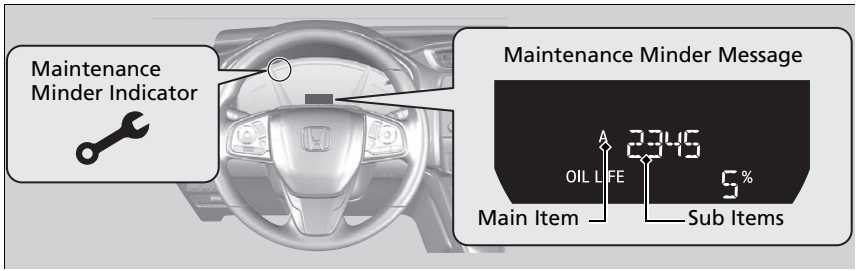
Maintenance Service Items P. 545

■ Maintenance Minder Messages on the Information Display

To switch the display, press the (**TRIP**) knob.

Oil Life Display	Explanation	Information	Maintenance Minder Indicator
	When you select the Maintenance Minder screen, it displays codes for maintenance items due at the next engine oil change, along with the percentage of engine oil life remaining.	—	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the ignition switch to ON, then goes off.
	The engine oil life indicator starts to appear along with other due-soon maintenance item codes when the remaining oil life drops to 15 percent.	The engine oil is approaching the end of its service life.	 Starts to come on when the remaining engine oil life drops to 15 percent. It goes off when the display is switched.
	The remaining engine oil has passed its service life, and a negative distance appears after driving over 10 miles (U.S. models) or 10 km (Canadian models). The negative distance on the display blinks.	The engine oil life has passed. The maintenance items must be inspected and serviced immediately.	 Stays on as a reminder even when the display is switched.

Maintenance Service Items



Maintenance Service Items

- Inspect idle speed every 160,000 miles (256,000 km).
- Adjust the valves during services A, B, 1, 2, or 3 if they are noisy.

U.S. models

CODE	Maintenance Main Items
A	• Replace engine oil*1

B	• Replace engine oil*1 and oil filter
	• Inspect front and rear brakes
	• Inspect these items:
	  • Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots
	  • Suspension components
	  • Driveshaft boots
	  • Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA®)
	  • All fluid levels and condition of fluids
	  • Exhaust system#
	  • Fuel lines and connections#

*1: If a Maintenance Minder indicator does not appear more than 12 months after the display is reset, change the engine oil every year.
*2: If you drive in dusty conditions, replace the air cleaner element every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).
*3: If you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel-powered vehicles, replace the dust and pollen filter every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).
#: See information on maintenance and emissions warranty.

CODE	Maintenance Sub Items
1	• Rotate tires
2	• Replace air cleaner element*2 • Replace dust and pollen filter*3 • Inspect drive belt
3	• Replace transmission fluid*4
4	• Replace spark plugs • Inspect valve clearance
5	• Replace engine coolant
6	• Replace rear differential fluid
7	• Replace brake fluid*5

*4: Driving in mountainous areas at very low vehicle speeds or trailer towing results in higher transmission temperatures. This requires transmission fluid changes more frequently than recommended by the Maintenance Minder. If you regularly drive your vehicle under these conditions, have the transmission fluid changed every 25,000 miles (40,000 km).
*5: If a Maintenance Minder Indicator does not appear more than 36 months after the display for item 7 is reset, change the brake fluid every 3 years.

Continued

Canadian models

Maintenance Service Items

- Inspect idle speed every 256,000 km (160,000 miles).
- Adjust the valves during services A, 0, 9, 1, 2, or 3 if they are noisy.

CODE	Maintenance Main Items
A	• Replace engine oil*1
0	• Replace engine oil*1 and oil filter

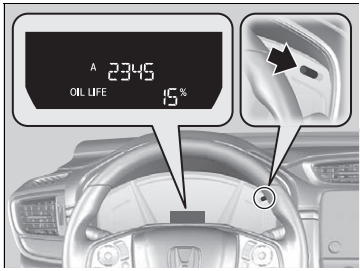
*1: If a Maintenance Minder indicator does not appear more than 12 months after the display is reset, change the engine oil every year.
*2: If you drive in dusty conditions, replace the air cleaner element every 24,000 km (15,000 miles).
*3: If you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel-powered vehicles, replace the dust and pollen filter every 24,000 km (15,000 miles).
*4: Driving in mountainous areas at very low vehicle speeds or trailer towing results in higher transmission temperatures. This requires transmission fluid changes more frequently than recommended by the Maintenance Minder. If you regularly drive your vehicle under these conditions, have the transmission fluid changed every 40,000 km (25,000 miles).
*5: If a Maintenance Minder Indicator does not appear more than 36 months after the display for item 7 is reset, change the brake fluid every 3 years.
: See information on maintenance and emissions warranty.

CODE	Maintenance Sub Items
1	• Rotate tires
2	• Replace air cleaner element*2 • Replace dust and pollen filter*3 • Inspect drive belt
3	• Replace transmission fluid*4
4	• Replace spark plugs • Inspect valve clearance
5	• Replace engine coolant
6	• Replace rear differential fluid
7	• Replace brake fluid*5

9	• Inspect front and rear brakes
	• Inspect these items:
	  • Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots
	  • Suspension components
	  • Driveshaft boots
	  • Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA®)
	  • All fluid levels and condition of fluids
	  • Exhaust system#
	  • Fuel lines and connections#

Resetting the Display

Reset the Maintenance Minder display if you have performed the maintenance service.



1. Turn the ignition switch to ON II and have the vehicle at a complete stop.
2. Display the Maintenance Minder by repeatedly pressing the (**TRIP**) knob.
3. Press and hold the knob for 10 seconds or more.
   ▶ The display will blink to show it is in reset mode.
4. Rotate the knob to select the item you wish to reset.
   ▶ Reset the selected item by pushing the knob for five seconds or more.

Resetting the Display

NOTICE

Failure to reset the Maintenance Minder™ display after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

The dealer will reset the Maintenance Minder™ display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the Maintenance Minder™ display yourself.

Models with driver information interface

To Use Maintenance Minder™

■ Displaying the Maintenance Minder Information

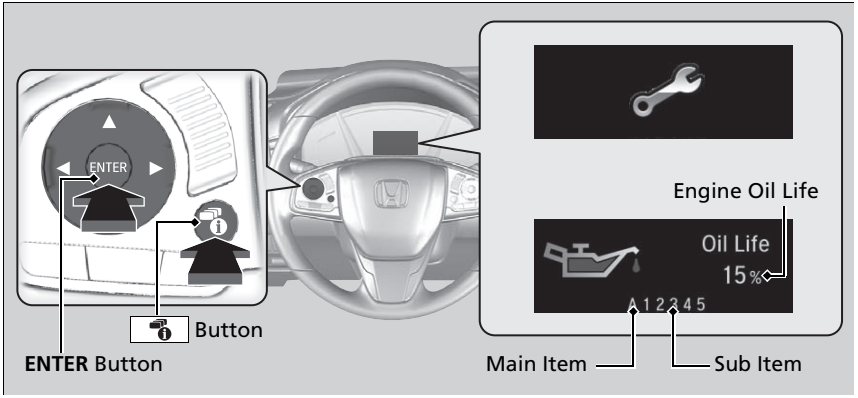
Certain maintenance items due soon, along with the estimated remaining oil life, appear on the driver information interface.

You can view them on the Maintenance Minder screen at any time.

1. Set the power mode to ON.

2. Press the button several times until is displayed.

3. Press **ENTER** to go to the Maintenance Minder screen. The engine oil life appears on the driver information interface along with maintenance items due soon.



Displaying the Maintenance Minder Information

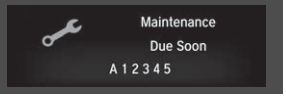
Based on the engine operating conditions, the remaining engine oil life is calculated and displayed as a percentage.

Displayed Engine Oil Life (%)	Calculated Engine Oil Life (%)
100	100 to 91
90	90 to 81
80	80 to 71
70	70 to 61
60	60 to 51
50	50 to 41
40	40 to 31
30	30 to 21
20	20 to 16
15	15 to 11
10	10 to 6
5	5 to 1
0	0

There is a list of maintenance main and sub items you can view on the driver information interface.

Maintenance Service Items P. 550

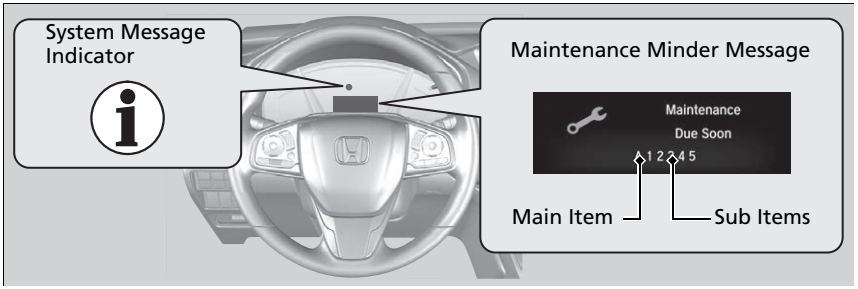
Maintenance Minder Messages on the Driver Information Interface

Maintenance Message	Oil Life Display	Explanation	Information
—		When you select the Maintenance Minder screen, it displays codes for maintenance items due at the next engine oil change, along with the percentage of engine oil life remaining.	—
Maintenance Due Soon 		The engine oil life indicator starts to appear along with other due-soon maintenance item codes when the remaining oil life drops to 15 percent.	The engine oil is approaching the end of its service life.
Maintenance Due Now 		The remaining engine oil life is 5 to 1 percent. Press the [i] button to switch to another display.	The engine oil has almost reached the end of its service life, and the maintenance items should be inspected and serviced as soon as possible.
Maintenance Past Due 		The engine oil has passed its service life, and a negative distance appears after driving over 10 miles (U.S. models) or 10 km (Canadian models). The negative distance on the display blinks.	The engine oil life has passed. The maintenance items must be inspected and serviced immediately.

The system message indicator (ⓘ) comes on along with the Maintenance Minder message.

Continued

Maintenance Service Items



Maintenance Service Items

- Inspect idle speed every 160,000 miles (256,000 km).
- Adjust the valves during services A, B, 1, 2, or 3 if they are noisy.

U.S. models

CODE	Maintenance Main Items
A	• Replace engine oil*1

B	• Replace engine oil*1 and oil filter
	• Inspect front and rear brakes
	• Inspect these items:
	  • Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots
	  • Suspension components
	  • Driveshaft boots
	  • Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA®)
	  • All fluid levels and condition of fluids
	  • Exhaust system#
	  • Fuel lines and connections#

CODE	Maintenance Sub Items
1	• Rotate tires
2	• Replace air cleaner element*2 • Replace dust and pollen filter*3 • Inspect drive belt
3	• Replace transmission fluid*4
4	• Replace spark plugs • Inspect valve clearance
5	• Replace engine coolant
6	• Replace rear differential fluid
7	• Replace brake fluid*5

*1: If a Maintenance Minder message does not appear more than 12 months after the display is reset, change the engine oil every year.
*2: If you drive in dusty conditions, replace the air cleaner element every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).
*3: If you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel-powered vehicles, replace the dust and pollen filter every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).
#: See information on maintenance and emissions warranty.

*4: Driving in mountainous areas at very low vehicle speeds or trailer towing results in higher transmission temperatures. This requires transmission fluid changes more frequently than recommended by the Maintenance Minder. If you regularly drive your vehicle under these conditions, have the transmission fluid changed every 25,000 miles (40,000 km).
*5: If a Maintenance Minder Indicator does not appear more than 36 months after the display for item 7 is reset, change the brake fluid every 3 years.

Canadian models

Maintenance Service Items

- Inspect idle speed every 256,000 km (160,000 miles).
- Adjust the valves during services A, 0, 9, 1, 2, or 3 if they are noisy.

CODE	Maintenance Main Items
A	• Replace engine oil*1
0	• Replace engine oil*1 and oil filter

*1: If a Maintenance Minder message does not appear more than 12 months after the display is reset, change the engine oil every year.
*2: If you drive in dusty conditions, replace the air cleaner element every 24,000 km (15,000 miles).
*3: If you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel-powered vehicles, replace the dust and pollen filter every 24,000 km (15,000 miles).
*4: Driving in mountainous areas at very low vehicle speeds or trailer towing results in higher transmission temperatures. This requires transmission fluid changes more frequently than recommended by the Maintenance Minder. If you regularly drive your vehicle under these conditions, have the transmission fluid changed every 40,000 km (25,000 miles).
*5: If a Maintenance Minder Indicator does not appear more than 36 months after the display for item 7 is reset, change the brake fluid every 3 years.
: See information on maintenance and emissions warranty.

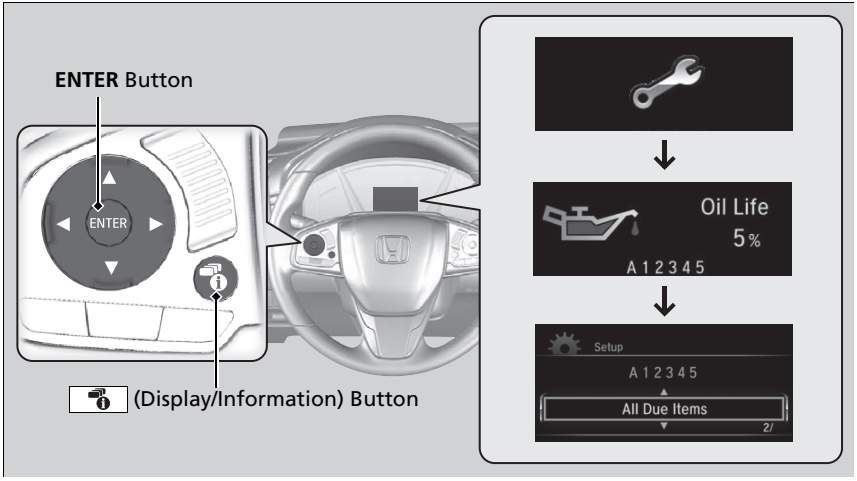
CODE	Maintenance Sub Items
1	• Rotate tires
2	• Replace air cleaner element*2 • Replace dust and pollen filter*3 • Inspect drive belt
3	• Replace transmission fluid*4
4	• Replace spark plugs • Inspect valve clearance
5	• Replace engine coolant
6	• Replace rear differential fluid
7	• Replace brake fluid*5

9	• Inspect front and rear brakes
	• Inspect these items:
	  • Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots
	  • Suspension components
	  • Driveshaft boots
	  • Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA®)
	  • All fluid levels and condition of fluids
	  • Exhaust system#
	  • Fuel lines and connections#

Continued

■ Resetting the Display

Reset the Maintenance Minder display if you have performed the maintenance service.



1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the (display/information) button repeatedly until the appears.
3. Press the **ENTER** button.
4. Press and hold the **ENTER** button for about 10 seconds to enter the reset mode.
5. Press ▲ / ▼ to select a maintenance item to reset, or to select **All Due Items** (You can also select **Cancel** to end the process).
6. Press the **ENTER** button to reset the selected item.
7. Repeat from step 4 for other items you wish to reset.

Resetting the Display

NOTICE

Failure to reset the Maintenance Minder™ display after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

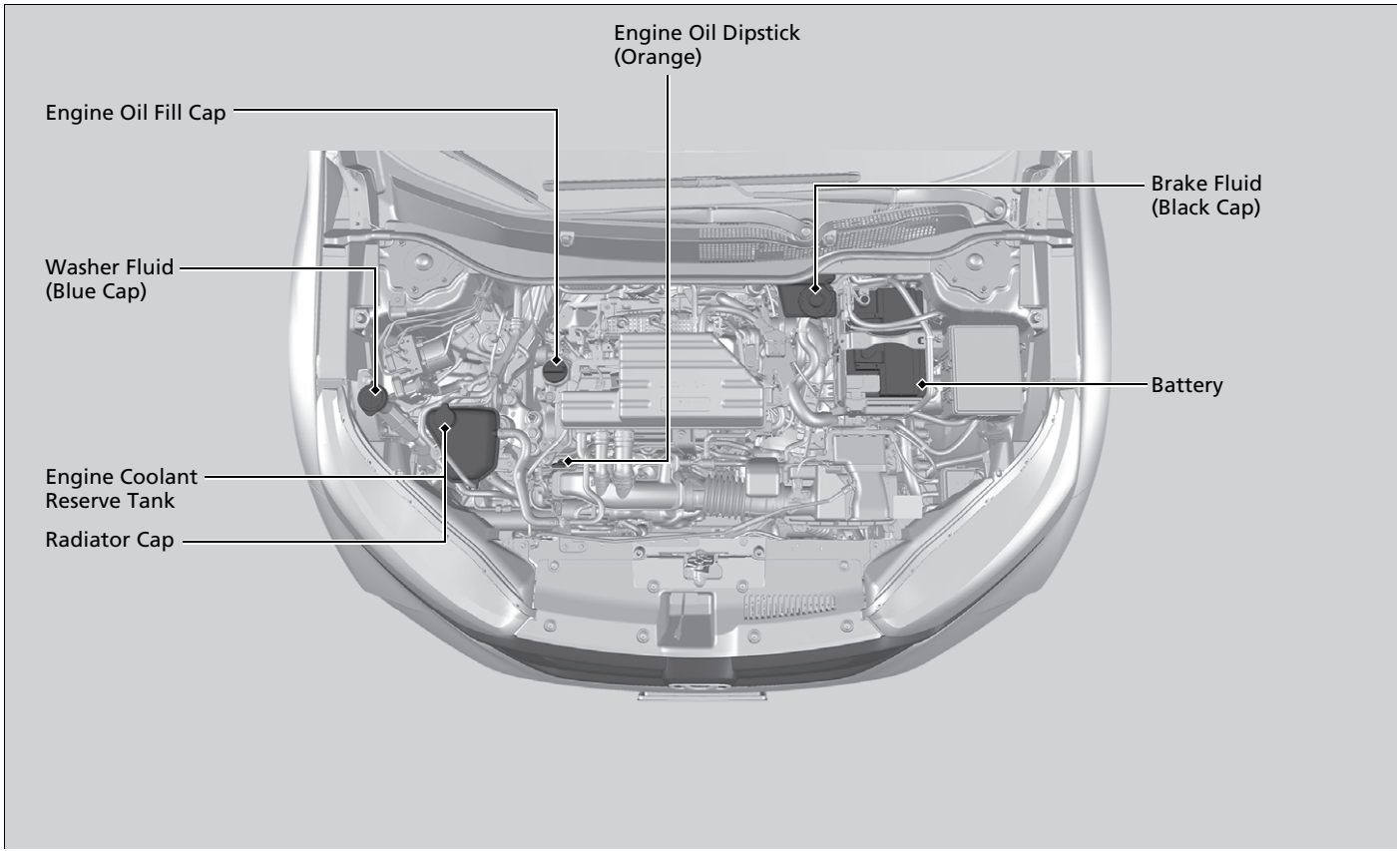
The dealer will reset the Maintenance Minder™ display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the Maintenance Minder™ display yourself.

You can also reset the Maintenance Minder™ display using the audio/information touch screen.

How to customize P. 344

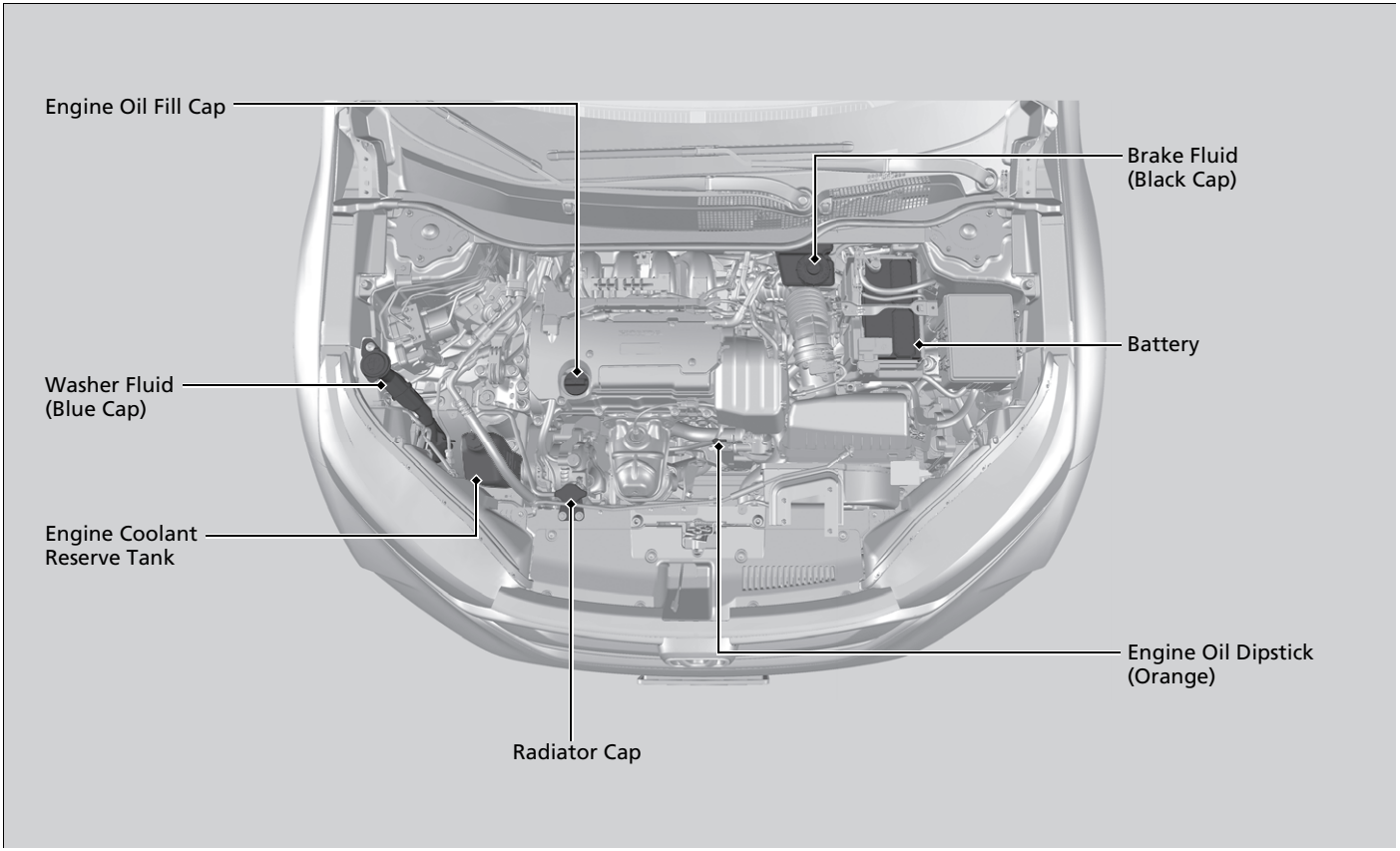
Maintenance Items Under the Hood

1.5 L engine models

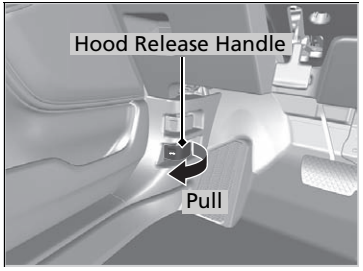


Continued

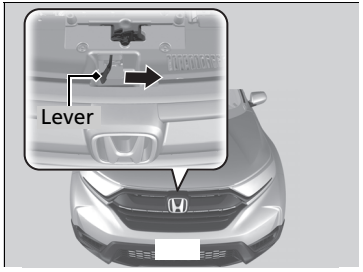
2.4 L engine models



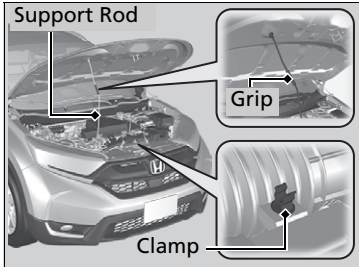
Opening the Hood



1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the hood release handle under the lower left corner of the dashboard.
   ▶ The hood will pop up slightly.



3. Push the hood latch lever (located under the front edge of the hood to the center) to the side and raise the hood. Once you have raised the hood slightly, you can release the lever.



4. Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the hood.

When closing, remove the support rod, and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the hood. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 12 inches (30 cm) and let the hood close.

Opening the Hood

NOTICE

Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are raised. The hood will strike the wipers, resulting in damage to the hood and/or the wipers.

When closing the hood, check that the hood is securely latched.

If the hood latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the hood without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

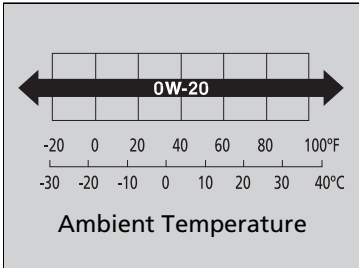
Recommended Engine Oil

- **Genuine Honda Motor Oil**
- **Premium-grade 0W-20 detergent oil with an API Certification Seal on the container.**



Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

This seal indicates the oil is energy conserving and that it meets the American Petroleum Institute's latest requirements.



Use a Genuine Honda Motor Oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable viscosity for the ambient temperature as shown.

■ Synthetic oil

You may also use synthetic motor oil if it is labeled with the API Certification Seal and is the specified viscosity grade.

Recommended Engine Oil

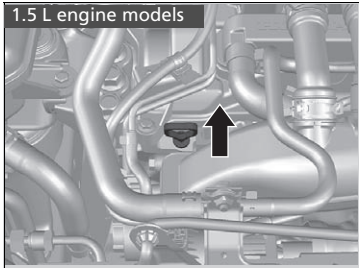
Engine Oil Additives

Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

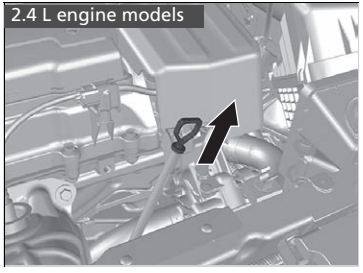
Oil Check

We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.
Park the vehicle on level ground.
Wait approximately three minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.

1.5 L engine models



2.4 L engine models



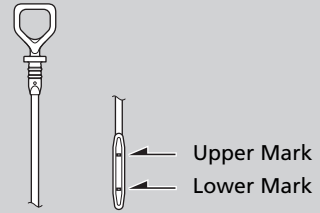
1. Remove the dipstick (orange).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.

Oil Check

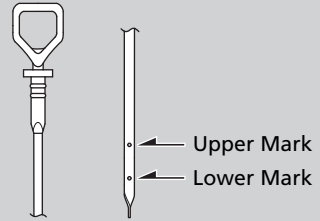
If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil, being careful not to overfill.

Continued

1.5 L engine models



2.4 L engine models

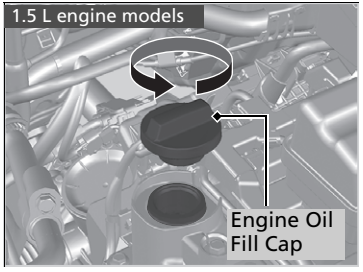


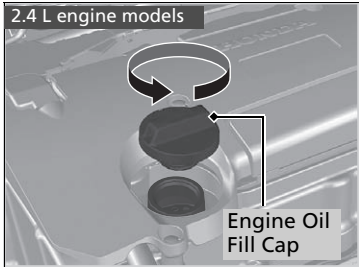
4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

Oil Check

Under certain driving conditions, it is normal for the engine oil level to rise above the upper mark. If you have a concern, consult a dealer for details.

Adding Engine Oil





1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

Adding Engine Oil

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

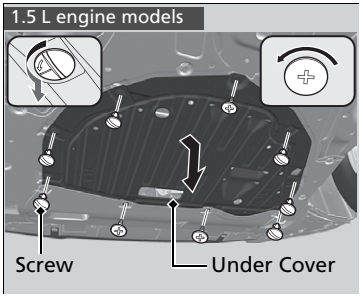
NOTICE

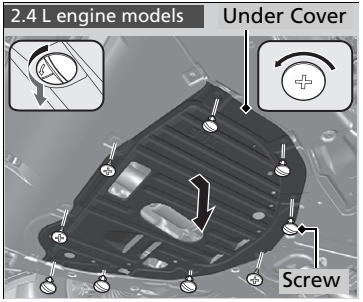
Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil may result in leaks and engine damage.

Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

You must change the engine oil and oil filter regularly in order to maintain the engine's lubrication. The engine may be damaged if they are not changed regularly. Specialized equipment and procedures are required to change the engine oil and oil filter. Have an authorized Honda dealer replace them.
Do not attempt to change the engine oil and oil filter yourself.

Change the oil and filter in accordance with the maintenance message on the information display*/driver information interface*.





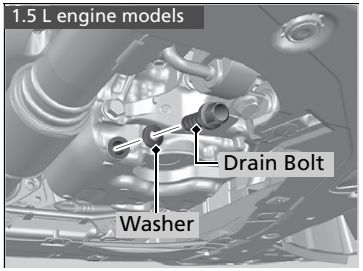
1. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature, and then turn the engine off.
2. Open the hood and remove the engine oil fill cap.
3. Remove the phillips head screws and slotted head screws by turning 90° counterclockwise on the undercarriage and remove the under cover.

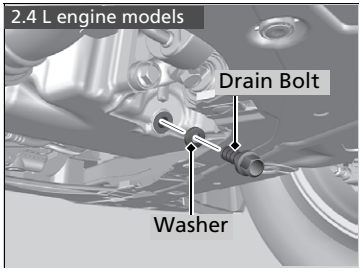
Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

NOTICE

You may damage the environment if you do not dispose of the oil in a suitable way. If you are changing the oil by yourself, appropriately dispose of the used oil. Put the oil in a sealed container and take it to a recycling center. Do not throw the oil away into a garbage can or onto the ground.

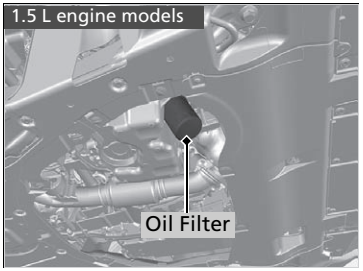
* Not available on all models

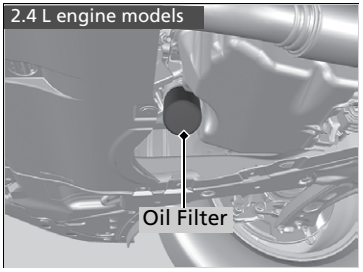




4. Remove the drain bolt and washer from the bottom of the engine, and drain the oil into a suitable container.

Continued





5. Remove the oil filter and dispose of the remaining oil.
6. Check that the filter gasket is not stuck to the engine contact surface.
▶ If it is stuck, you must detach it.
7. Wipe away dirt and dust adhering to the contact surface of the engine block, and install a new oil filter.
▶ Apply a light coat of new engine oil to the oil filter gasket.
8. Put a new washer on the drain bolt, then reinstall the drain bolt.
▶ Tightening torque:
30 lbf·ft (40 N·m, 4.0 kgf·m)
9. Pour the recommended engine oil into the engine.
▶ Engine oil change capacity (including filter):

1.5 L engine models

3.7 US qt (3.5 L)

2.4 L engine models

4.6 US qt (4.4 L)

10. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap securely and start the engine.
11. Run the engine for a few minutes, and then check that there is no leak from the drain bolt or oil filter.
12. Stop the engine, wait for three minutes, and then check the oil level on the dipstick.
▶ If necessary, add more engine oil.
13. Reinstall the under cover in the same order it was removed.

Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

You will need a special wrench to replace the oil filter. You can buy this wrench from a dealer.

When installing the new oil filter, follow the instructions supplied with the oil filter.

Reinstall the engine oil fill cap. Start the engine. The low oil pressure indicator should go off within five seconds. If it does not, turn off the engine, and check your work.

Be sure to verify that the oil filter is designed for your vehicle. A genuine Honda oil filter is recommended for optimum lubrication flow and filtration properties to assure the reliability of the engine.

1.5 L engine models

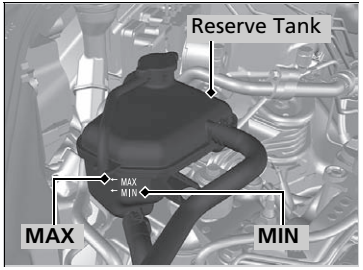
Engine Coolant

Specified coolant: Honda Long Life Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

■ Checking the Coolant



1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
   ▶ If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Engine Coolant

⚠WARNING

Removing the reserve tank cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the reserve tank cap.

NOTICE

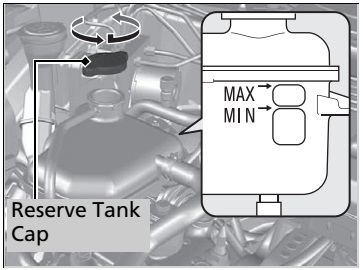
Genuine Honda engine coolant is a 50/50 mixture of antifreeze and water that can withstand freezing at temperatures as low as about -31°F (-35°C). If your vehicle is consistently subjected to temperatures below this, the concentration of antifreeze in the coolant should be increased. Consult a dealer for details.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminum engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

Continued

■ Adding the Coolant



1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
2. Turn the reserve tank cap 1/8 turn counterclockwise and relieve any pressure in the coolant system.
3. Push down and turn the reserve tank cap counter-clockwise to remove it.
4. Pour coolant into the reserve tank until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
5. Put the reserve tank cap back on, and tighten it fully.

Adding the Coolant

NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

2.4 L engine models

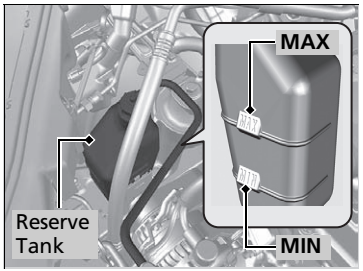
Engine Coolant

Specified coolant: Honda Long Life Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

Reserve Tank



1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
   ▶ If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Engine Coolant

⚠WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

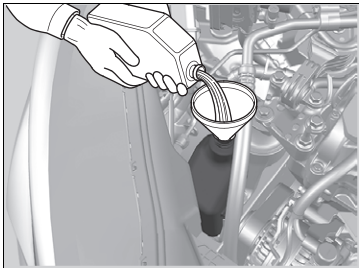
NOTICE

Genuine Honda engine coolant is a 50/50 mixture of antifreeze and water that can withstand freezing at temperatures as low as about -31°F (-35°C). If your vehicle is consistently subjected to temperatures below this, the concentration of antifreeze in the coolant should be increased. Consult a dealer for details.

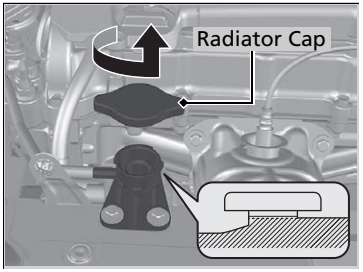
If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminum engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

Continued



■ Radiator



1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
2. Turn the radiator cap 1/8 turn counterclockwise and relieve any pressure in the coolant system.
3. Push down and turn the radiator cap counterclockwise to remove it.
4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
5. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.

Radiator

NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

Transmission Fluid

Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda HCF-2 Transmission Fluid

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.

Do not attempt to check or change the continuously variable transmission fluid yourself.

Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid

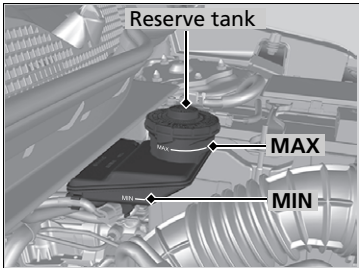
NOTICE

Do not mix HCF-2 with other transmission fluids.
Using a transmission fluid other than HCF-2 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission. Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to HCF-2 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle limited warranty.

Brake Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3

■ Checking the Brake Fluid



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

Brake Fluid

NOTICE

Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

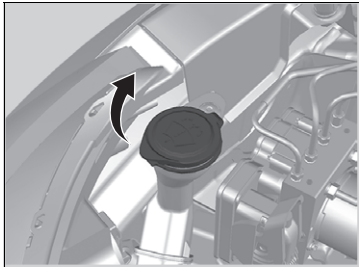
If the specified brake fluid is not available, you should use only DOT 3 or DOT 4 fluid from a sealed container as a temporary replacement.

Using any non-Honda brake fluid can cause corrosion and decrease the longevity of the system. Have the brake system flushed and refilled with Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3 as soon as possible.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid

Check the amount of window washer fluid by looking at the reservoir.



If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

Canadian models with driver information interface

If the washer fluid is low, a message appears on the driver information interface.

All models

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid

NOTICE

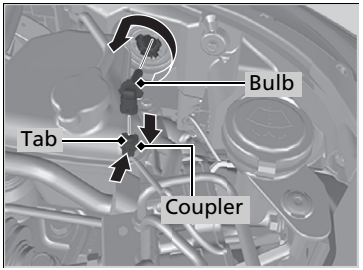
Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windshield washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windshield washer pump.

Headlight Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

High beam headlight: 60 W (HB3 for halogen bulb type)*
High beam headlight: LED type*
Low beam headlight: 55 W (H11 for halogen bulb type)*
Low beam headlight: LED type*

High Beam Headlight



1. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
2. Rotate the old bulb counter-clockwise to remove.
3. Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it clockwise.
4. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

Headlight Bulbs

Models with halogen headlights

NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit.
Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the cargo area or tow a trailer, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

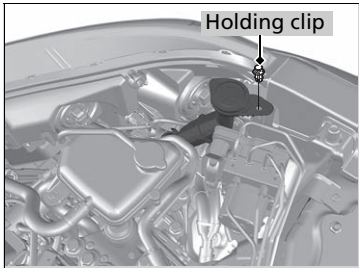
When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its base, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

Models with LED headlights

Headlights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

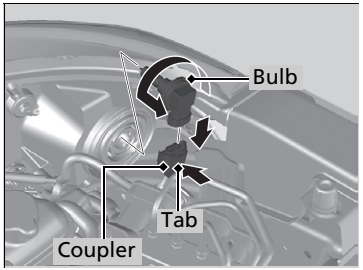
* Not available on all models

Low Beam Headlights



Passenger side

1. Remove the holding clip using a flat-tip screwdriver, then remove the upper part of the window washer reserve tank.

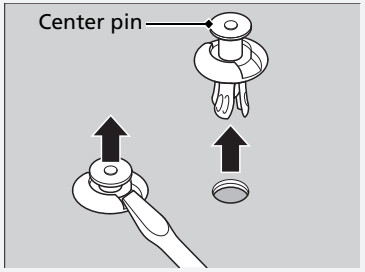


Both side

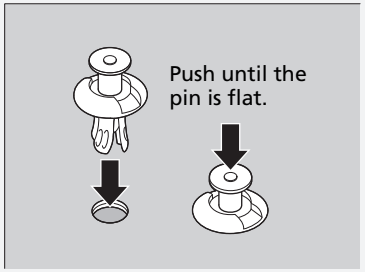
2. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
3. Rotate the old bulb counter-clockwise to remove.
4. Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it clockwise.
5. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

Low Beam Headlights

Insert a flat-tip screwdriver, lift and remove the center pin to remove the clip.



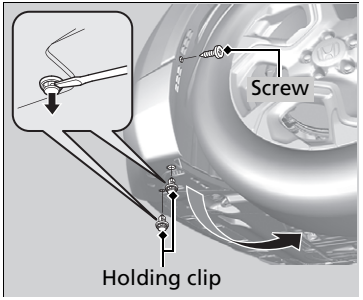
Insert the clip with the center pin raised, and push until it is flat.



Fog Light Bulbs*

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Fog Light: 35 W (H8 for halogen bulb type)



1. Remove the screw using a Phillips-head screwdriver and remove the holding clips using a flat-tip screwdriver.
2. Pull down the under cover.

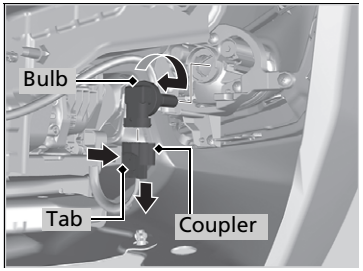
Fog Light Bulbs*

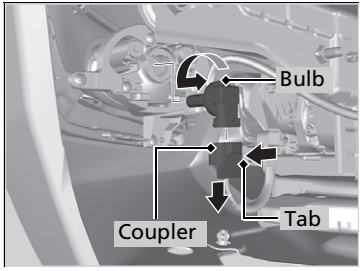
NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its plastic case, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

* Not available on all models





3. Push the tab to remove the coupler.

Right side

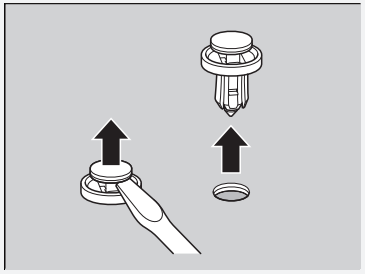
4. Rotate the old bulb clockwise to remove.
5. Insert a new bulb into the fog light assembly and turn it counter-clockwise.
6. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

Left side

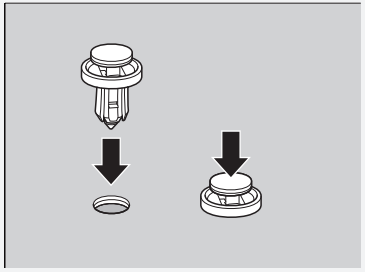
4. Rotate the old bulb counter-clockwise to remove.
5. Insert a new bulb into the fog light assembly and turn it clockwise.
6. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

Fog Light Bulbs*

Insert a flat-tip screwdriver, lift and remove the center pin to remove the clip.



Insert the clip with the center pin raised, and push until it is flat.



* Not available on all models

Parking/Daytime Running Lights

Parking/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Front Turn Signal/Front Side Marker Lights

Front turn signal lights/front side marker lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights*

Side turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Brake/Taillight, Rear Turn Signal Light and Rear Side Marker Lights

Brake/taillight, rear turn signal light and rear side marker lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

 * Not available on all models

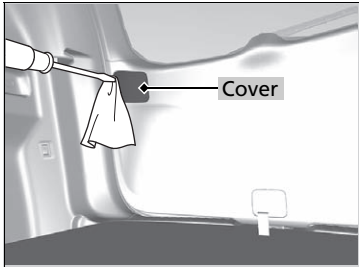
Taillight and Back-Up Lights

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Taillight: LED **Back-Up Light: 16W**

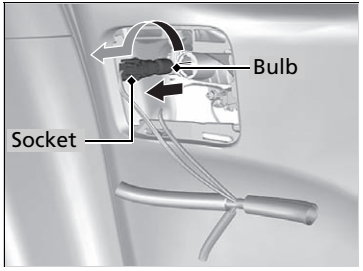
1. Remove the lower taillight assembly.

➡ **Brake/Taillight, Rear Turn Signal Light and Rear Side Marker Lights** P. 574



2. Remove the cover by prying on the edge using a flat-tip screwdriver.

▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



3. Turn the socket to the left and remove it. Remove the old bulb.

4. Insert a new bulb.

Taillight and Back-Up Lights

Taillights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Rear License Plate Light

Rear license plate light is LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

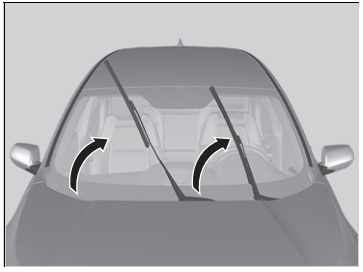
High-Mount Brake Light

High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

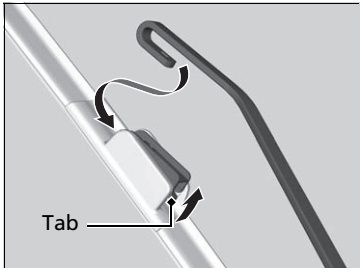
Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Lift the driver side wiper arm first, then the passenger side.



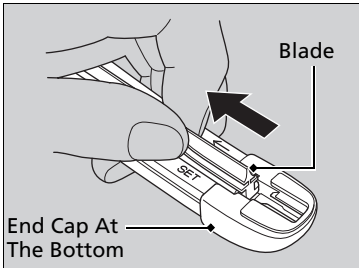
2. Press and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.

Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber

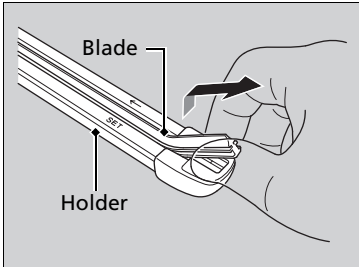
NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windshield, it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windshield.

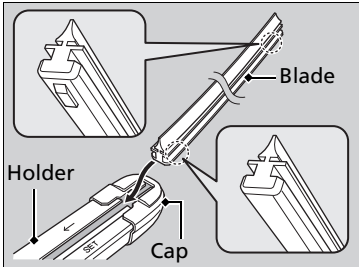
Continued



3. Pull the end of the wiper blade to the direction of the arrow in the image until it unfastens from the holder's end cap.

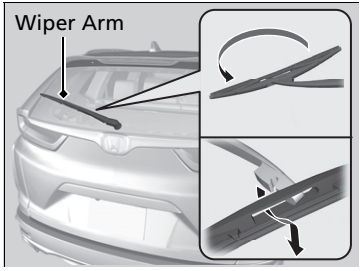


4. Pull the wiper blade in the opposite direction to slide it out of the holder.

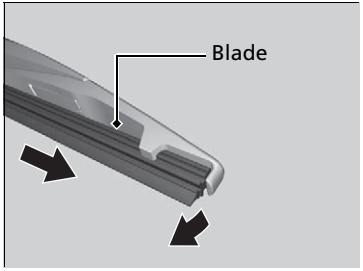


5. Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder from the bottom end.
▶ The tab on the holder should fit in the indent of the wiper blade.
6. Slide the holder onto the wiper arm, then push down the lock tab.
7. Lower the passenger side wiper arm first, then the driver side.

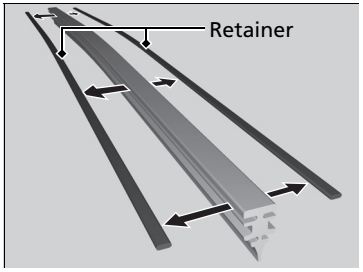
Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Raise the wiper arm off.
2. Pivot the bottom end of the holder up until it comes off from the wiper arm.



3. Slide the blade out of the holder.



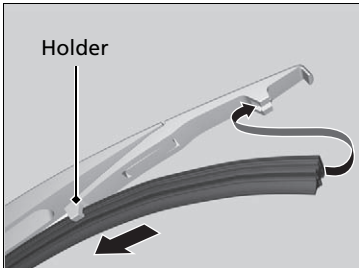
4. Remove the retainers from wiper blade and mount to a new rubber blade.

Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber

NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm; it may damage the rear window.

Continued



5. Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder.
▶ Make sure it is engaged correctly, then install the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm.

Checking Tires

To safely operate your vehicle, your tires must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tires provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label or specifications page for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tires wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tires make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tires. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tire gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tires, including the spare. Even tires in good condition can lose 1–2 psi (10–20 kPa, 0.1–0.2 kgf/cm^2) per month.

■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tires and valve stems.
Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tire if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tire. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.
  Wear Indicators P. 586
- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

Checking Tires

⚠WARNING

Using tires that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tires are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km). If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

If checked when hot, tire pressure can be as much as 4–6 psi (30–40 kPa, 0.3–0.4 kgf/cm^2) higher than if checked when cold.

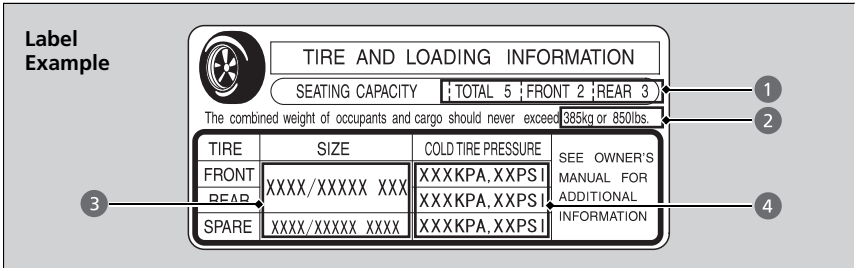
Whenever tire pressure is adjusted, you must calibrate the TPMS.
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) P. 503

Have a dealer check the tires if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tires and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

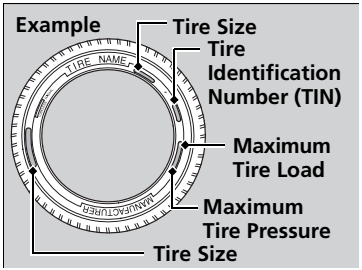
Check the spare tire pressure once a month or before long trips.

Tire and Loading Information Label

The label attached to the driver's doorjamb provides necessary tire and loading information.



Tire Labeling



The tires that came on your vehicle have a number of markings. Those you should be aware of are described below.

■ Tire Sizes

Whenever tires are replaced, they should be replaced with tires of the same size.

Tire and Loading Information Label

The tire and loading information label attached to the driver's doorjamb contains:

1. The number of people your vehicle can carry.
2. The total weight your vehicle can carry. Do not exceed this weight.
3. The original tire sizes for front, rear, and spare.
4. The proper cold tire pressure for front, rear, and spare.

Tire Sizes

Following is an example of tire size with an explanation of what each component means.

P235/60 R18 102T

P: Vehicle type (P indicates passenger vehicle).
235: Tire width in millimeters.
60: Aspect ratio (the tire's section height as a percentage of its width).
R: Tire construction code (R indicates radial).
18: Rim diameter in inches.
102: Load index (a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tire can carry).
T: Speed symbol (an alphabetical code indicating the maximum speed rating).

Tire Identification Number (TIN)

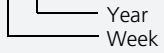
The tire identification number (TIN) is a group of numbers and letters that look like the example in the side column. TIN is located on the sidewall of the tire.

Glossary of Tire Terminology

Cold Tire Pressure – The tire air pressure when the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km).
Load Rating – Means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure.
Maximum Inflation Pressure – The maximum tire air pressure that the tire can hold.
Maximum Load Rating – Means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.
Recommended Inflation Pressure – The cold tire inflation pressure recommended by the manufacturer.
Treadwear Indicators (TWI) – Means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread.

Tire Identification Number (TIN)

DOT B97R FW6X 2209
DOT: This indicates that the tire meets all requirements of the U.S. Department of Transportation.
B97R: Manufacturer's identification mark.
FW6X: Tire type code.
22 09: Date of manufacture.



DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles)

The tires on your vehicle meet all U.S. Federal Safety Requirements. All tires are also graded for treadwear, traction, and temperature performance according to Department of Transportation (DOT) standards. The following explains these gradings.

■ Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

■ Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

For example:
Treadwear 200
Traction AA
Temperature A

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

■ Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

■ Temperature

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

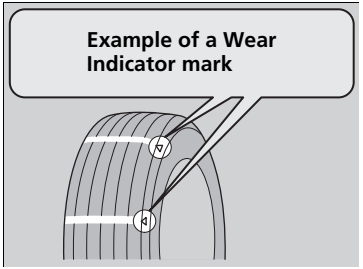
Traction

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Wear Indicators



The groove where the wear indicator is located is 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) shallower than elsewhere on the tire. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tire. **Worn out tires have poor traction on wet roads.**

Tire Service Life

The life of your tires is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tires are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tires reach five years old. All tires, including the spare, should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

Tire and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tires with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tire pressure rating (as shown on the tire's sidewall). Using tires of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tires at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tires in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

Tire and Wheel Replacement

⚠WARNING

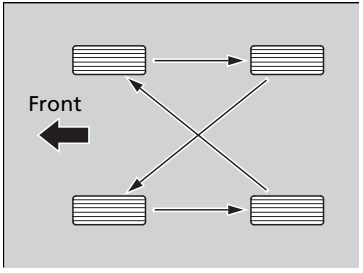
Installing improper tires on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tires recommended in this owner's manual.

Tire Rotation

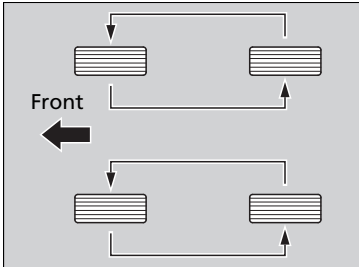
Rotating tires according to the maintenance messages on the information display*/ driver information interface* helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tire life.

■ Tires without rotation marks



Rotate the tires as shown here.

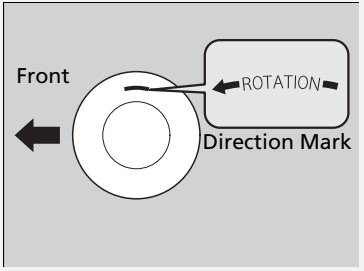
■ Tires with rotation marks



Rotate the tires as shown here.

Tire Rotation

Tires with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tires should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



Whenever tires are rotated, you must calibrate the TPMS.

➡ **Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)** P. 503

 * Not available on all models

Winter Tires

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount all season marked "M+S" tires, snow tires, or tire chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tire chains, snow tires, or all season tires when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tires:
- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tires.
- Mount the tires to all four wheels.

For tire chains:
- Install them on the front tires only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tire clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

Models with 235/65R17 tires

Cable-type: SCC RADIAL CHAIN TC2111MM

Models with 235/60R18 tires

Cable-type: SCC RADIAL CHAIN TC2212MM

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

Winter Tires

⚠WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tire chains.

NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

When tire chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tires, be aware that these tires are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

Checking the Battery

The condition of the battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the driver information interface will display a warning message. If this happens, have you vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The audio system is disabled.
  ➔ **Audio System Theft Protection** P. 232
- The clock resets.
  ➔ **Clock** P. 132
- Canadian models only: The immobilizer system needs to be reset.
  ➔ **Immobilizer System Indicator** P. 91

Battery

⚠WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

When conducting any battery maintenance, wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do it.

WARNING: Battery post, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds.
Wash your hands after handling.

Charging the Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (–) cable first, and reconnect it last.

Battery

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications.
Consult a dealer for more information.

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*, Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System*, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) system, VSA® OFF, Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*, low tire pressure/Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*, and Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) may come on along with a message in the Driver Information Interface* when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1 after re-connecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

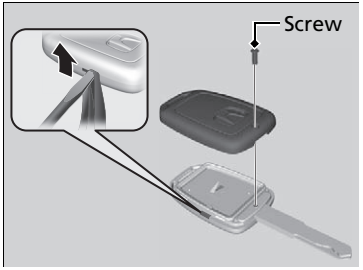
*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Replacing the Button Battery

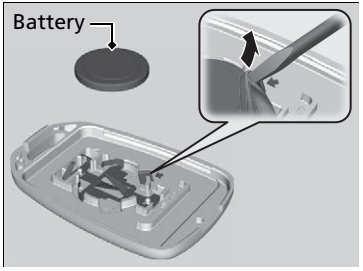
If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.

■ Master Keys with Remote Transmitter*



Battery type: CR1620

1. Unscrew the cover with a small Phillips-head screwdriver.



2. Open the remote transmitter.
▶ Wrap the small flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching the transmitter.
3. Remove the button battery with the small flat-tip screwdriver.
4. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.

Replacing the Button Battery

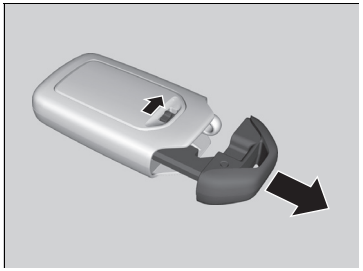
NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

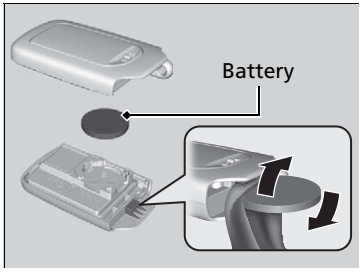
 * Not available on all models

Smart Entry Remote*



Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the built-in key.



2. Remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.
- ▶ Remove carefully to avoid losing the buttons.
- ▶ Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the smart entry remote.

3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.

* Not available on all models

Air Conditioning

To ensure proper and safe operation, the Society of Automotive Engineers (SAE J2845) recommends that the refrigerant system only be serviced by trained and certified technicians.

Never repair or replace the air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

New replacement mobile air conditioning evaporators must be certified (and labeled) as meeting SAE Standard J2842.

Climate Control System Maintenance

NOTICE

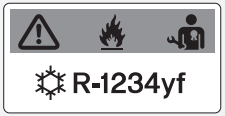
Vented refrigerant is harmful to the environment. To avoid refrigerant from venting, never replace the evaporator with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

Refrigerant in your vehicle's air conditioning system is flammable and can be ignited during servicing if proper procedures are not followed.

Air conditioner label is found under the hood:

Safety Labels P. 77
Specifications P. 636

Canadian models



: Caution

: Flammable Refrigerant

: Requires Registered Technician to Service

: Air Conditioning System

Dust and Pollen Filter

The climate control system is equipped with a dust and pollen filter that collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air. The Maintenance Minder™ messages will let you know when to replace the filter.

We recommend that you replace the dust and pollen filter sooner when using your vehicle in areas with high concentrations of dust.

Dust and Pollen Filter

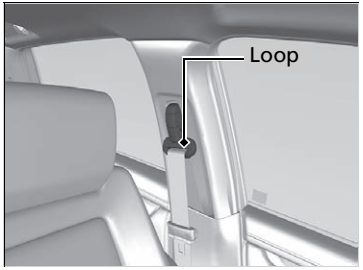
If the airflow from the climate control system deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced. Please contact a dealer for replacement.

Interior Care

Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt. Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts. Let the belts air dry. Wipe the loops of the seat belt anchors using a clean cloth.



Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle. Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches.
Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.
If a silicone based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discoloration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles.
Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or gasoline.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.
Do not place used cloths on top of resin based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Cleaning the Window

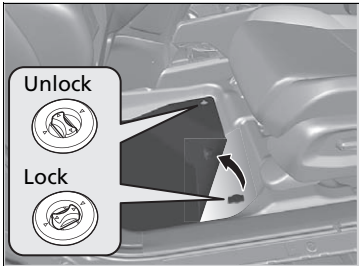
Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

Be careful not to spill fluids, such as water or glass cleaner, on or around the cover of both the front sensor camera* and the rainfall/light sensor*.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Floor Mats



The driver's floor mat hooks over floor anchors, which keep them from sliding forward. To remove a mat for cleaning, turn the anchor knobs to the unlock position. When reinstalling the mat after cleaning, turn the knobs to the lock position.

Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.

Floor Mats

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchors.
Position the rear seat floor mats properly. If they are not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions.

Maintaining Genuine Leather*

To properly clean leather:

1. Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.
2. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.
3. Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.
4. Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

Maintaining Genuine Leather*

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark colored clothing can rub onto the leather seats resulting in discoloration or stains.

* Not available on all models

Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive.
Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap are stuck to painted surfaces.

Using an Automated Car Wash

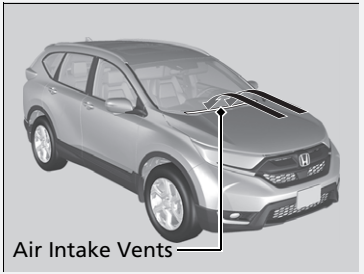
- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.
- Automatic intermittent wiper equipment vehicles, wipers switch to OFF.

Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.

Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.



Do not spray water onto the capless unit when the fuel fill door is open. It can cause damage to the fuel system or engine.

Continued

■ Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

■ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

If you get gasoline, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin coated parts, they may be stained or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

■ Maintaining Aluminum Wheels

Aluminum is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminum alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their luster or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

Applying Wax

NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.
Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.
However, if you see large amounts water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windshield. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any accessories over areas marked SRS Airbag, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows. Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
  Fuses P. 628
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/J2534 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used only with automobile system diagnostic devices. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, and could result in a system malfunction, drained battery, or other unexpected problems.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet federal, state, province, territory, and local regulations.

Do not modify or attempt to repair any of the electrical components.

⚠WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

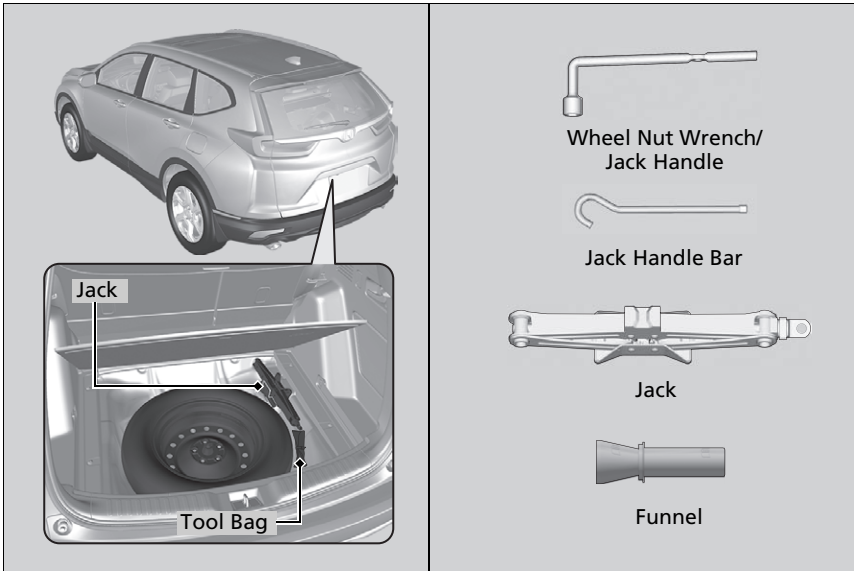
Honda Genuine accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

Tools
Types of Tools 602
If a Tire Goes Flat
Changing a Flat Tire 603
Engine Does Not Start
Checking the Engine 610
If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak 611
Emergency Engine Stop 612
Jump Starting 613
Shift Lever Does Not Move 616
Overheating
How to Handle Overheating 617
Indicator, Coming On/Blinking
If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On 621
If the Charging System Indicator Comes On 621
If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks 622
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks 623
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On 624
If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On 625
If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks 627
Fuses
Fuse Locations 628
Inspecting and Changing Fuses 631
Emergency Towing 632
When You Cannot Open the Tailgate 633
Refueling 634

Types of Tools



Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the cargo area.

Changing a Flat Tire

If a tire goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then stop in a safe place. Replace the flat tire with a compact spare tire. Go to a dealer as soon as possible to have the full-size tire repaired or replaced.

1. Park the vehicle on firm, level, and non-slippery surface, and apply the parking brake.
2. Move the shift lever to P.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0 *1.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Continued

Changing a Flat Tire

Follow compact spare precautions:
Periodically check the tire pressure of the compact spare. It should be set to the specified pressure.
Specified Pressure: 60 psi (420 kPa, 4.2 kgf/cm^2)

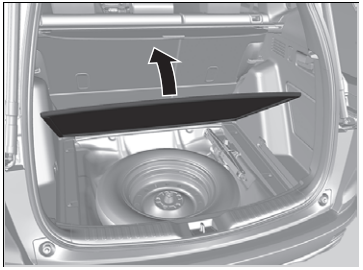
When driving with the compact spare tire, keep the vehicle speed under 50 mph (80 km/h). Replace with a full-size tire as soon as possible.

The compact spare tire and wheel in your vehicle are specifically for this model. Do not use them with another vehicle. Do not use another type of compact spare tire or wheel with your vehicle.

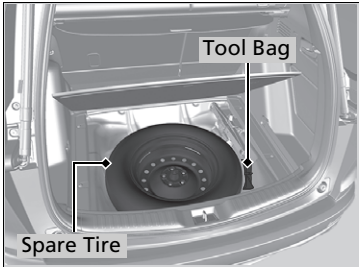
Do not mount tire chains on a compact spare tire. If a chain-mounted front tire goes flat, remove one of the full-size rear tires and replace it with the compact spare tire. Remove the flat front tire and replace it with the full-size tire that was removed from the rear. Mount the tire chains on the front tire.

NOTICE
Do not use the jack if it doesn't work properly. Call your dealer or a professional towing service.

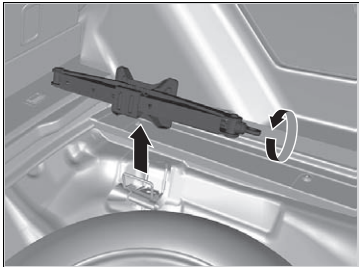
■ Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tire



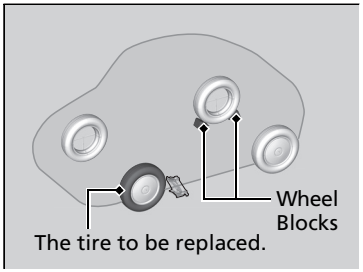
1. Open the cargo area floor lid.



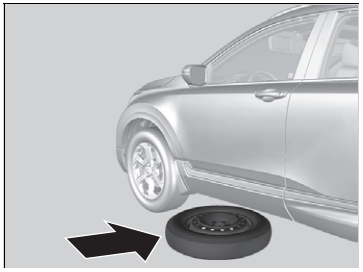
2. Take the tool bag out of the cargo area. Take the wheel nut wrench and jack handle bar out of the tool bag.



3. Take the jack out of the spare tire area.
4. Unscrew the wing bolt and remove the spacer cone. Then remove the spare tire.



5. Place a wheel block or rock in the front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tire.



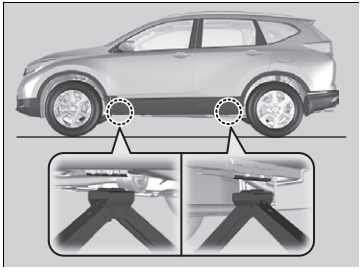
6. Place the compact spare tire under the vehicle body (wheel side up) near the tire that needs to be replaced.



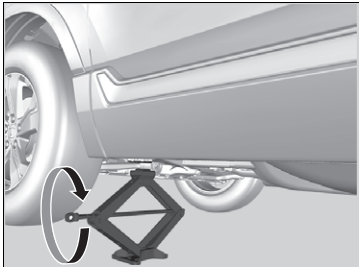
7. Loosen each wheel nut about one turn using the wheel nut wrench.

Continued

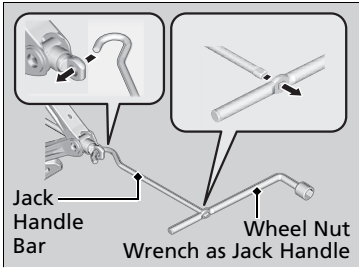
How to Set Up the Jack



1. Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tire to be changed.



2. Turn the end bracket clockwise (as shown in image) until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.
▶ Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.



3. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tire is off the ground.

How to Set Up the Jack

⚠WARNING

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tire exactly and never get under the vehicle when it is supported only by the jack.

Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

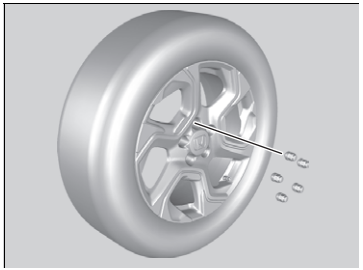
Use the jack provided in your vehicle. Other jacks may not support the weight ("load") or their shape may not match.

The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:
- Do not use while the engine is running.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.

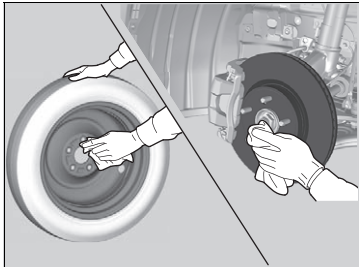
Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants.

Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

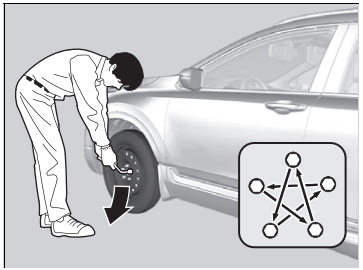
Replacing the Flat Tire



1. Remove the wheel nuts and flat tire.



2. Wipe the mounting surfaces of the wheel with a clean cloth.
3. Mount the compact spare tire.
4. Screw the wheel nuts until they touch the lips around the mounting holes, then stop rotating.



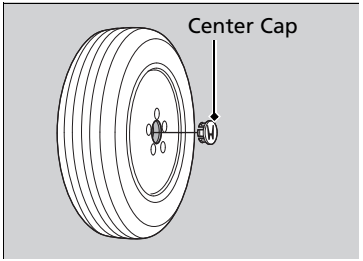
5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack. Tighten the wheel nuts in the order indicated in the image. Go around, tightening the nuts, two to three times in this order.
Wheel nut torque:
80 lbf·ft (108 N·m, 11 kgf·m)

Replacing the Flat Tire

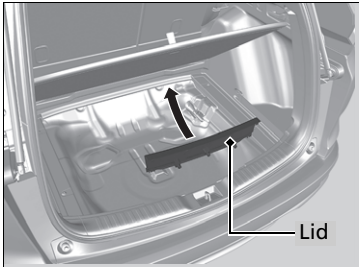
Do not over tighten the wheel nuts by applying extra torque using your foot or a pipe.

Continued

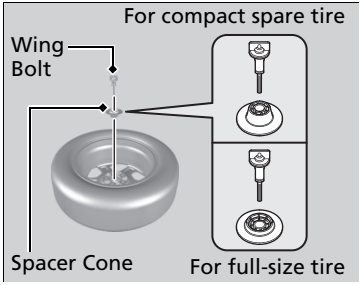
■ Storing the Flat Tire



1. Remove the center cap.



2. Remove the cargo area lid as shown.



3. Place the flat tire face down in the spare tire well.
4. Remove the spacer cone from the wing bolt, flip it over, and insert it back on the bolt. Secure the flat tire with the wing bolt.
5. Securely store the wheel nut wrench and jack handle bar back in the tool bag. Store the bag in the cargo area properly.
6. Store the jack in its holder. Turn the jack's end bracket to lock it in place.

Storing the Flat Tire

⚠WARNING

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants.
Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

TPMS and the Spare Tire

If you replace a flat tire with the spare tire, the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator comes on while you are driving. After driving for a few miles (kilometers), the indicator will start blinking for a short time and then stay on. **Tire Pressures Low** appears on the driver information interface*, but this is normal.

Calibrate the TPMS when you replace the tire with a specified regular tire.

➔ **TPMS Calibration** P. 503

* Not available on all models

Checking the Engine

If the engine does not start, check the starter.

Checking the Engine

If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.
➡ **Jump Starting** P. 613

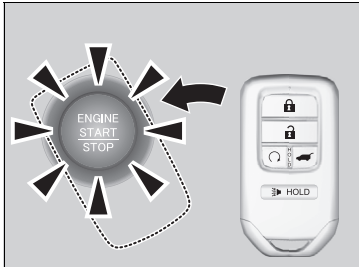
Starter condition	Checklist
Starter doesn't turn or turns over slowly. The battery may be dead. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	Models with smart entry system **Check for a message on the driver information interface*.** • If the **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message appears ➡ **If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak** P. 611 ▶Make sure the smart entry remote is in its operating range. ➡ **ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range** P. 172
	Check the brightness of the interior lights. Turn on the interior lights and check the brightness. • If the interior lights are dim or do not come on at all ➡ **Battery** P. 590 • If the interior lights come on normally ➡ **Fuses** P. 628
The starter turns over normally, but the engine doesn't start. There may be a problem with a fuse. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	**Review the engine start procedure.** Follow its instructions, and try to start the engine again. ➡ **Starting the Engine** P. 446
	Check the immobilizer system indicator. When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the engine cannot be started. ➡ **Immobilizer System** P. 161
	Check the fuel level. There should be enough fuel in the tank. ➡**Fuel Gauge** P. 117
	Check the fuses. Check all fuses or have the vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Inspecting and Changing Fuses** P. 631
	If the problem continues: ➡ **Emergency Towing** P. 632

* Not available on all models

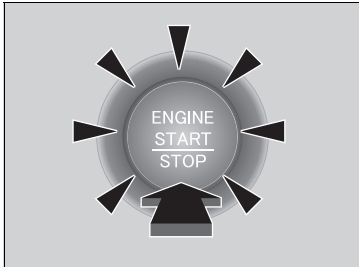
Models with smart entry system

If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak

If the beeper sounds and the **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message appears on the driver information interface; and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes and the engine will not start. Start the engine as follows:



1. Touch the center of the **ENGINE START/STOP** button with the **H** logo on the smart entry remote while the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is flashing.
The buttons on the smart entry remote should be facing you.
▶ The **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes for about 30 seconds.



2. Depress the brake pedal and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button within 10 seconds after the beeper sounds and the indicator changes from flashing to on.
▶ If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

Models with smart entry system

Emergency Engine Stop

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button may be used to stop the engine due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must stop the engine, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock. However, because turning off the engine disables the power assist the engine provides to the steering and braking systems, it will require significantly more physical effort and time to steer and slow the vehicle. Use both feet on the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle and stop immediately in a safe place.

The power mode is in ACCESSORY when the engine is stopped.
To change the mode to VEHICLE OFF, change the shift lever to P after the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

Canadian models

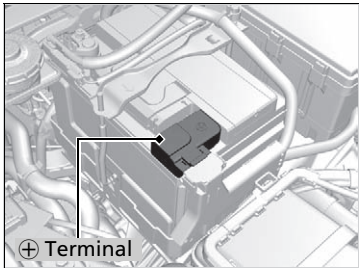
Then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice without depressing the brake pedal.

Emergency Engine Stop

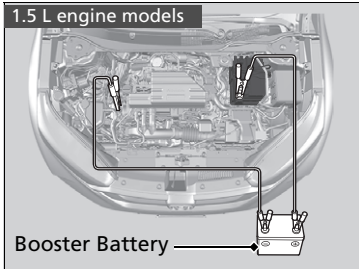
Do not press the button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the engine to be switched off.

Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as the audio and lights. Turn off the engine, then open the hood.



1. Open the terminal cover on your vehicle's battery positive ⊕ terminal.
2. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's battery ⊕ terminal.
3. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery ⊕ terminal.
   - ▶ Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
   - ▶ When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15 volts. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.



4. Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery ⊖ terminal.

Jump Starting

⚠WARNING

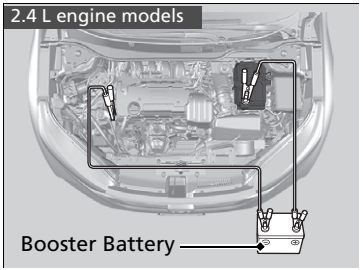
A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

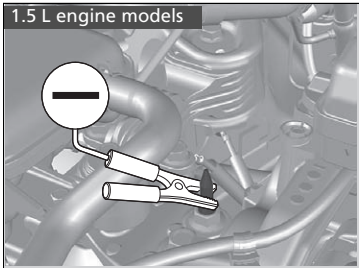
Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

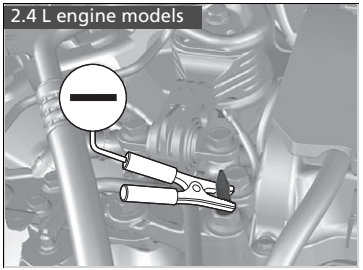
Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Also be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.

Battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.

Continued







5. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the engine hanger (as shown). Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.

6. If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its rpm slightly.

7. Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

What to Do After the Engine Starts

Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order:

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's ground.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊖ terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's battery ⊕ terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊕ terminal.

Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

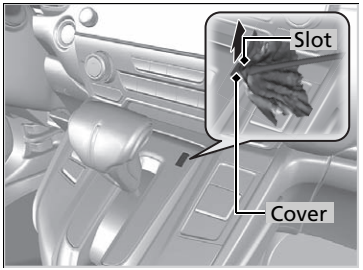
What to Do After the Engine Starts

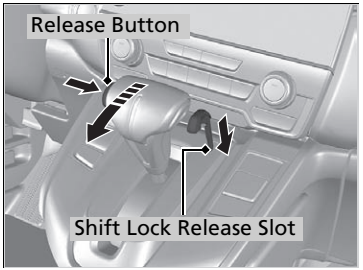
The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*, Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System*, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) system, VSA® OFF, Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*, low tire pressure/Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*, and Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) may come on along with a message in the Driver Information Interface* when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1 after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Shift Lever Does Not Move

Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the P position.

Releasing the Lock





1. Set the parking brake.

Models without smart entry system

2. Remove the key from the ignition switch.

Models with smart entry system

2. Remove the built-in key from the smart entry remote.

All models

3. Wrap a cloth around the tip of a small flat-tip screwdriver. Put it into the shift lock release slot (as shown in image) and remove the cover.

4. Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.

5. While pushing the key down, press the shift lever release button, and place the shift lever into N.

▶ The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- The temperature gauge needle is at the H mark or the engine suddenly loses power.
- **Stop Driving When Safe. Engine Temperature Too Hot** message appears on the driver information interface.*
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

■ First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.

2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.

▶ **No steam or spray present:** Keep the engine running and open the hood.

▶ **Steam or spray is present:** Turn off the engine and wait until it subsides. Then open the hood.

How to Handle Overheating

⚠WARNING

Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the hood if steam is coming out.

NOTICE

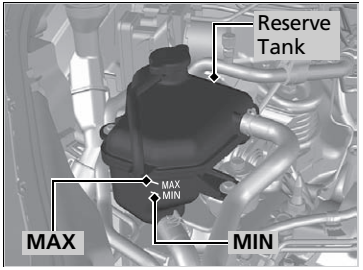
Continuing to drive with the temperature gauge needle at the H mark may damage the engine.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Next thing to do

1.5 L engine models



1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the temperature gauge needle goes down.
▶ If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately stop the engine.

2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level, and check the cooling system components for leaks.
▶ If the coolant level, in the reserve tank is low, or no coolant in the tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the reserve tank cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. Add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark and put the cap back on.

How to Handle Overheating

⚠WARNING

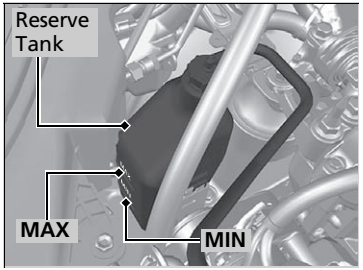
Removing the reserve tank cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the reserve tank cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

2.4 L engine models



1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the temperature gauge needle goes down.
   ▶ If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately stop the engine.
2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
   ▶ If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
   ▶ If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, restart it, and check the temperature gauge.

If the temperature gauge needle has gone down, resume driving. If it has not gone down, contact a dealer for repairs.

How to Handle Overheating

⚠WARNING

Removing the reserve tank cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the reserve tank cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

Continued

■ The Stop Driving When Safe. Engine Temperature Too Hot Message Appears On The Driver Information Interface.*

The **Stop Driving When Safe. Engine Temperature Too Hot** message appears on the driver information interface when the engine temperature is high.

➡ **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages*** P. 104

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
▶ Move the shift lever to P, and set the parking brake. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.

2. Keep the engine running, and wait until the message disappears.
▶ If the message does not disappear, have the vehicle inspected at a dealer.

How to Handle Overheating

Continuing to drive with the **Stop Driving When Safe. Engine Temperature Too Hot** message on the driver information interface may damage the engine.

 * Not available on all models

If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.

■ **What to do as soon as the indicator comes on**

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.

2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

■ **What to do after parking the vehicle**

1. Stop the engine and let it sit for about three minutes.

2. Open the hood and check the oil level.

➔ **Oil Check** P. 557

3. Start the engine and check the low oil pressure indicator.

▶ The indicator goes off: Start driving again.

▶ The indicator does not go off within 10 seconds: Stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs immediately.

If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

If the Charging System Indicator Comes On



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

Comes on when the battery is not being charged.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Turn off the climate control system, rear defogger, and other electrical systems. Immediately contact a dealer for repairs.

If the Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the engine. Restarting the engine may rapidly discharge the battery.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks



■ **Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink**

- Comes on when there is a problem with the engine emissions control system.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

■ **What to do when the indicator lamp comes on**

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

■ **What to do when the indicator lamp blinks**

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 31 mph (50 km/h) or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

U.S.



Canada



(Red)

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on while driving**

Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, downshift the transmission to slow the vehicle using engine braking.

■ **Reason for the indicator to blink**

- There is a problem with the electric parking brake system.

■ **What to do when the indicator blinks**

Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

Have your vehicle repaired immediately.
It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary, downshift the gears.

If the brake system indicator and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking.
Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work.
Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On**
P. 624

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On





■ **If the brake system indicator (red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, release the parking brake manually or automatically.**

➡ **Parking Brake** P. 508

- If the brake system indicator (red) continuously comes on or blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, stop the vehicle in a safe place and have it inspected by a dealer immediately.
  ▶ Preventing the vehicle from moving
  Move the shift lever to P.
- If the brake system indicator (amber) comes on alone, avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On

If you apply the parking brake, you may not be able to release it.

If the brake system indicator (red) and the brake system indicator (amber) come on at the same time, the parking brake is working.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work because it is checking the system.

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

- Comes on when there is a problem with the EPS system.
- If you depress the accelerator pedal repeatedly to increase the engine speed while the engine is idling, the indicator comes on, and sometimes the steering wheel becomes harder to operate.
- Comes on when EPS steering angle center point memory is lost. This could be due to a number of problems to include: battery disconnect, main fuse blow, low battery causing reset of the EPS system, wire damage to EPS harness. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*, Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System*, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) system, VSA® OFF, Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*, low tire pressure/Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*, and Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) indicators also come on along with a message in the Driver Information Interface*.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and restart the engine.
If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

- If the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*, Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System*, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) system, VSA® OFF, Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*, low tire pressure/Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*, and Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) indicators come on along with a message in the Driver Information Interface*, you need to calibrate the VSA and EPS systems.
  Drive at a speed of more than 12 mph (20 km/h) for less than 10 seconds to calibrate the VSA and EPS systems.
  If the indicators come on and stay on, park your vehicle in a safe place, turn off and restart the engine, then repeat the above operation.
  If the indicators still come on and stay on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

 * Not available on all models

If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink**

A tire pressure is significantly low, or the TPMS has not been calibrated. If there is a problem with the TPMS or the compact spare tire is installed, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Drive carefully avoiding abrupt cornering and hard braking.

Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tire pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tire pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

▶ Calibrate the TPMS after the tire pressure is adjusted.

➡ **TPMS Calibration** P. 503

■ **What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on**

Have the tire inspected by a dealer as soon as possible. If the compact spare tire causes the indicator to blink, change the tire to a full-size tire. The indicator will go off after driving for a few miles (kilometers).

▶ Calibrate the TPMS after a full-size tire is reinstalled.

➡ **TPMS Calibration** P. 503

If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tire can cause it to overheat. An overheated tire can fail. Always inflate your tires to the prescribed level.

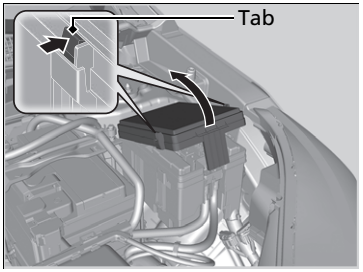
Fuse Locations

If any electrical devices are not working, turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0*1 and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.

■ Engine Compartment Fuse Box

Located near the brake fluid reservoir. Push the tabs to open the box.



■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Audio AMP*	(30 A)
	Electric Brake Booster	40 A
	Main Fan Motor	30 A
	Relay Module 1	30 A
	IG Main 2*2	30 A
	Relay Module 2	30 A
	Battery	125 A
2	EPS	70 A
	IG Main 1	30 A*2 50 A*3
	Fuse Box Option	(40 A)
	Fuse Box	60 A
	Front Wiper Motor	30 A
	Sub Fan Motor	30 A
3	Rear Defroster	40 A
	Starter Motor	30 A
	Fuse Box	40 A
	ABS/VSA Motor	40 A
	ABS/VSA FSR	40 A
	Blower Motor	40 A
4	Option Block 1*	(40 A)
	Option Block 2*	(40 A)
	–	–
	Power Tail Gate*	(40 A)
5	VB ACT*4	(7.5 A)
6	Washer	15 A
7	FI Main	15 A
8	FI Sub*4 DBW*5	15 A
9	Stop Lights	10 A
10	Injector	20 A
11	LAF	7.5 A
12	FI ECU*4 –*5	10 A –
13	Front Wiper Deicer*	(15 A)
14	Hazard	10 A
15	IG Coil	15 A
16	Transmission*4 –*5	(15 A) –
17	–	–
18	Back Up	10 A
19	Audio	15 A
20	AWD*	(20 A)

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.
*2:Models with smart entry system
*3:Models without smart entry system
*4:1.5L engine models
*5:2.4L engine models

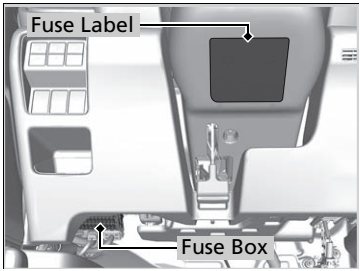
 * Not available on all models

	Circuit Protected	Amps
21	Rear Seat Heater*1 –*2	(20 A) –
22	Front Fog Lights*3/Lower Shutter Grille	(15 A)
23	A/C Compressor/Upper Shutter Grille	10 A
24	Horn	10 A
25	Cooling Fan	7.5 A
26	–	–
27	–	–
28	ST Magnetic Switch*4	(7.5 A)
29	–	–
30	–	–

*1:Canadian models with rear seat heater
*2:Models without rear seat heater
*3:Models with fog lights
*4:Models without smart entry system

Interior Fuse Box

Located under the dashboard.



Fuse locations are shown on the label on the steering column lower cover.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Accessory	10 A
2	Key Lock	5 A
3	Option	10 A
4	Option*1 Transmission*2, *3	5 A (10 A)
5	Option	10 A
6	SRS Indicator	10 A
7	Meter	10 A
8	Fuel Pump	15 A
9	A/C	10 A
10	Accessory Power Socket (Center Console)	(20 A)
11	Engine Control*3	5 A
12	Passenger's Side Door Lock	10 A
13	Driver's Side Door Unlock	10 A
14	Rear Driver's Side Power Window	20 A
15	Front Passenger's Side Power Window	20 A
16	Door Lock	20 A
17	Transmission*1, *3 Option*2	(10 A) 5 A

*1:Models with smart entry system
*2:Models without smart entry system
*3:1.5L engine models

Continued

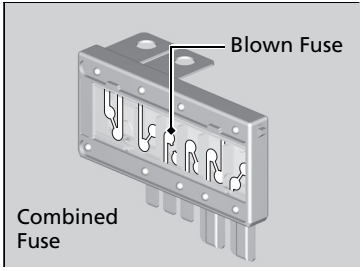
	Circuit Protected	Amps
18	Front Driver's Lumber support*	(10 A)
19	Moonroof*	(20 A)
20	Starter	10 A
21	ACG	10 A
22	Daytime Running Light	10 A
23	Steering Wheel Heater*1 Handsfree Power Tailgate Sensor*	(10 A)
24	Option	5 A
25	Driver's Door Lock	(10 A)
26	Passenger's Side Door Unlock	10 A
27	Rear Passenger's Side Power Window	20 A
28	Driver's Power Window	20 A
29	Front Accessory Power Socket	20 A
30	Smart Entry*1 STS*2	10 A 5 A
31	Driver's Power Seat Reclining*	(20 A)
32	Front Seat Heater*	(20 A)
33	Driver's Power Seat Sliding*	(20 A)
34	ABS/VSA	10 A
35	SRS	10 A
36	HAC Option*	20 A

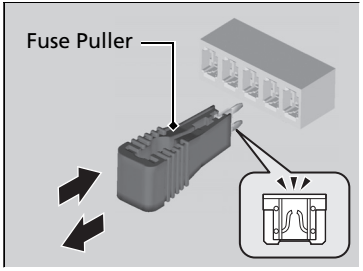
	Circuit Protected	Amps
37	Trailer*	15 A
38	Driver's Side Door Lock	10 A
39	Driver's Door Unlock	(10 A)
a	Power Tailgate Closer*	(20 A)
b	Passenger's Power Seat Sliding*	(20 A)
c	Passenger's Power Seat Reclining*	(20 A)
d	Panorama Shade Motor*3	(20 A)
e	Rear Blower	(20 A)
f	EPT L	(20 A)
g	EPT R	(20 A)
h	Accessory Power Socket (Cargo Area)*4	(20 A)

*1:Canadian models with steering heater
*2:Models without smart entry system
*3:Canadian models with panoramic roof
*4:Canadian models

* Not available on all models

Inspecting and Changing Fuses





1. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0 *1. Turn headlights and all accessories off.
2. Remove the fuse box cover.
3. Check the large fuse in the engine compartment.
   ▶ If the fuse is blown, use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the screw and replace it with a new one.
4. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
   ▶ If there is a blown fuse, remove it with the fuse puller, and replace it with a new one.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Inspecting and Changing Fuses

NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Replace fuse with a spare fuse of the same specified amperage.

Confirm the specified amperage using the charts on P. 628 to 630.

Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and conform the specific amperage on the fuse label.

Fuse Locations P. 628

There is a fuse puller on the back of the engine compartment fuse box cover.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

All models

■ **Flat bed equipment**

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.
This is the best way to transport your vehicle.

2WD models

■ **Wheel lift equipment**

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tires and lift them off the ground. The rear tires remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

Emergency Towing

NOTICE

Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

NOTICE

Improper towing, such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

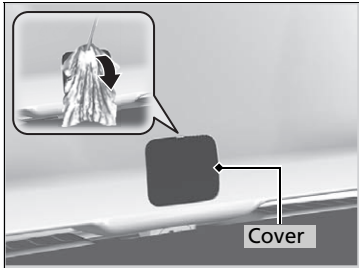
Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

Make sure the parking brake is released. If you cannot release the parking brake, your vehicle must be transported by the flat bed equipment.

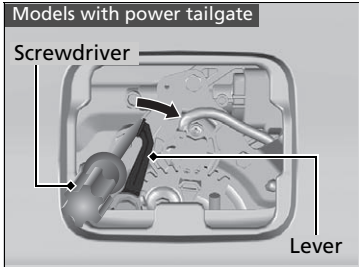
Parking Brake P. 508

What to Do When Unable to Open the Tailgate

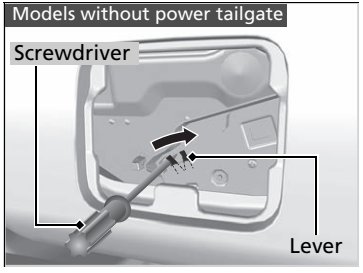
If you cannot open the tailgate, use the following procedure:



1. Use a flat-tip screwdriver and remove the cover on the inside of the tailgate.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



2. To open the tailgate, push the tailgate while pushing the lever to the right using a flat-tip screw driver.



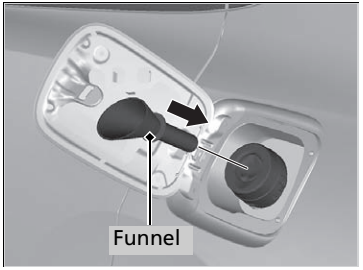
When You Cannot Open the Tailgate

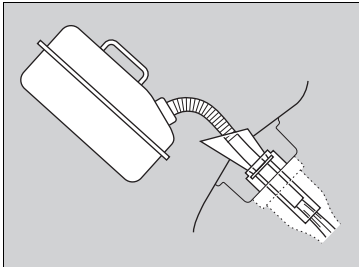
Following up:
After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

When you open the tailgate from inside, make sure there is enough space around the tailgate, and it does not hit anyone or any object.

Refueling From a Portable Fuel Container

If you have run out of fuel and need to refuel your vehicle from a portable fuel container, use the funnel provided with your vehicle.





1. Turn off the engine.
2. Press on the edge of the fuel fill door to make it pop up slightly.
   ▶ The fuel fill door opens.
3. Take the funnel out of the tool case in the cargo area.
   ➡ **Types of Tools** P. 602
4. Place the end of the funnel on the lower part of filler opening, then insert it slowly and fully.
   ▶ Make sure that the end of the funnel goes down along with the filler pipe.
5. Fill the tank with fuel from the portable fuel container.
   ▶ Pour fuel carefully so you do not spill any.
6. Remove the funnel from the filler neck.
   ▶ Wipe up any fuel from the funnel before storing it.
7. Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

Refueling From a Portable Fuel Container

⚠WARNING

Gasoline is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- **Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.**
- **Handle fuel only outdoors.**
- **Wipe up spills immediately.**

NOTICE

Do not insert the nozzle of a portable fuel container or any funnel other than the one provided with your vehicle. Doing so can damage the fuel system.
Do not try to pry open or push open the sealed fuel tank with foreign objects. This can damage the fuel system and its seal.

Make sure the fuel in the portable fuel container is gasoline before you refuel.

Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

Specifications 636
Identification Numbers
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, and Transmission Number 638
Devices that Emit Radio Waves 640
Reporting Safety Defects 641
Emissions Testing
Testing of Readiness Codes 642
Warranty Coverages 644
Authorized Manuals 646
Customer Service Information 647

■ Vehicle Specifications

Model	Honda CR-V	
No. of Passengers:		
Front	2	
Rear	3	
Total	5	
Weights:		
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating	U.S.:	4,695 lbs (2,130 kg)
	Canada:	2,130 kg
Gross Axle Weight Rating (Front)	U.S.:	2,425 lbs (1,100 kg)
	Canada:	1,100 kg
Gross Axle Weight Rating (Rear)	U.S.:	2,292 lbs (1,040 kg)*1 2,369 lbs (1,075 kg)*2
	Canada:	1,040 kg*1 1,075 kg*2

*1: 2WD models
*2: AWD models

■ Air Conditioning

Air Conditioning:	
Refrigerant Type	HFO-1234yf (R-1234yf)
Charge Quantity	14.6 – 16.4 oz (415 – 465 g)*1 15.3 – 17.1 oz (435 – 485 g)*2
Lubricant Type	RB100EV-01*1 RL85HM (POE)*2
Quantity	5.80 - 6.53 cu-in (95 - 107 cm^3)*1 4.70 - 6.28 cu-in (77 – 103 cm^3)*2

*1: 2.4 L engine models
*2: 1.5 L engine models

■ Engine Specifications

Displacement		143.72 cu-in (2,356 cm^3)*1 91.38 cu-in (1,498 cm^3)*2
Spark Plugs	NGK	DILKAR7H11GS*1 DILKAR7G11GS*1 ILZKAR8J8SY*2
	DENSO	DXE22HQR-D11S*1

*1: 2.4 L engine models
*2: 1.5 L engine models

■ Fuel

Type	Unleaded gasoline, Pump octane number of 87 or higher
Fuel Tank Capacity	14 US gal (53 L)

■ Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	U.S.: 2.6 US qt (2.5 L) Canada: 4.8 US qt (4.5 L)

■ Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)	55 W (H11)* LED*
Headlights (High Beam)	60 W (HB3)* LED*
Fog Lights*	35 W (H8)
Front Turn Signal/ Front Side Marker Lights	LED
Daytime Running/Parking Lights	LED
Side Turn Signal Lights*	LED
Tail and Brake/Rear Turn Signal/ Rear Side Marker Lights	LED
Back-Up Lights	16 W
Taillights	LED
High-Mount Brake Light	LED
Rear License Plate Light	LED
Interior Lights	
Map Lights	8 W
Ceiling Light	8 W* LED*
Cargo Area Light	5 W
Vanity Mirror Lights*	1.4 W

* Not available on all models

■Brake Fluid

Specified	Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3	

■Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda HCF-2 Transmission Fluid	
Capacity	Change	3.9 US qt (3.7 L)*1 4.5 US qt (4.3 L)*2

*1: 2WD models
*2: AWD models

■Rear Differential Fluid*

Specified	Honda DPSF-II	
Capacity	Change	1.32 US qt (1.25 L)

■Engine Oil

Recommended	·Genuine Honda Motor Oil 0W-20 ·API Premium-grade 0W-20 detergent oil	
Capacity	Change	4.4 US qt (4.2 L)*1 3.4 US qt (3.2 L)*2
	Change including filter	4.7 US qt (4.4 L)*1 3.7 US qt (3.5 L)*2

*1: 2.4 L engine models
*2: 1.5 L engine models

■Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda Long Life Antifreeze/Coolant Type2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity	1.65 US gal (6.24 L)*1 1.64 US gal (6.20 L)*2 (change including the remaining 0.17 US gal (0.65 L) in the reserve tank)*1 (change including the remaining 0.2 US gal (0.75 L) in the reserve tank)*2

*1: 2.4 L engine models
*2: 1.5 L engine models

■Tire

Regular	Size*1	235/65R17 104H	
	Pressure*1 psi (kPa [kgf/cm²])	Front	32 (220 [2.2])
		Rear	30 (210 [2.1])
	Size*2	235/60R18 103H	
	Pressure*2 psi (kPa [kgf/cm²])	Front	33 (230 [2.3])
		Rear	30 (210 [2.1])
Compact Spare	Size	T155/90D17 112M	
	Pressure psi (kPa [kgf/cm²])	60 (420 [4.2])	
Wheel Size	Regular	17 x 7 1/2J*1 18 x 7 1/2J*2	
	Compact Spare	17 x 4T	

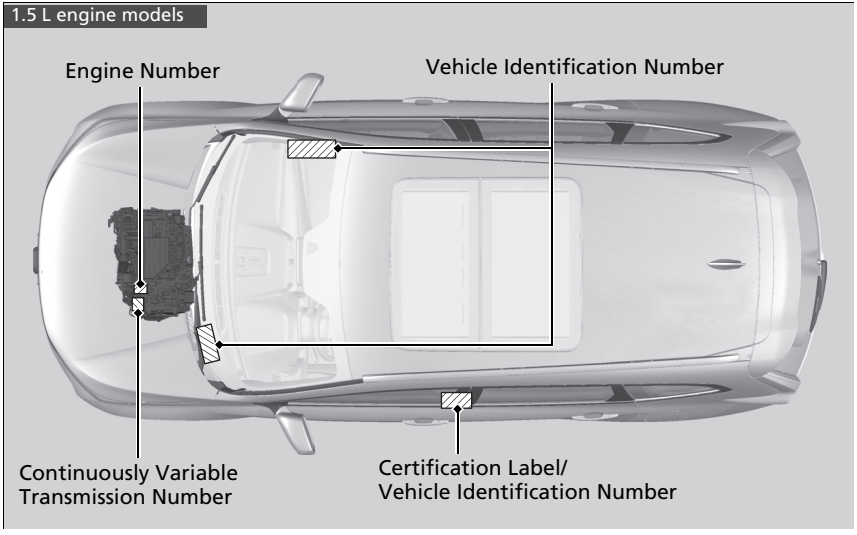
*1: Vehicle with 17 inch wheel
*2: Vehicle with 18 inch wheel

* Not available on all models

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, and Transmission Number

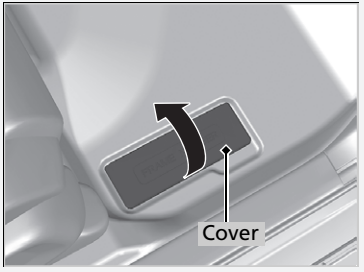
Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle.
The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number, and transmission number are shown as follows:

1.5 L engine models

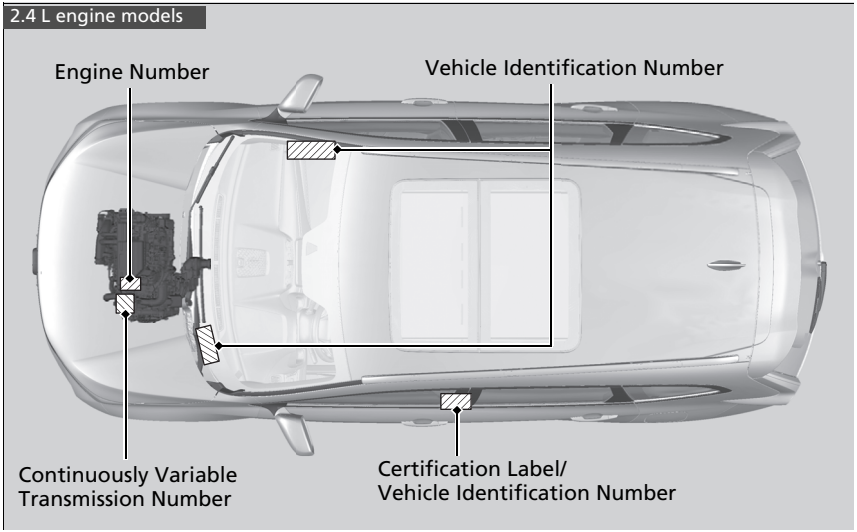


Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, and Transmission Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.



2.4 L engine models



The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

Audio System
Bluetooth® Audio
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®
HomeLink® Universal Transceiver*
HondaLink*
Immobilizer System
Remote Transmitter
Smart Entry System*
Collision Mitigation Braking System™*

Each of the above complies with the appropriate requirements or the required standards of FCC (Federal Communications Commission) and Industry Canada Standard, described below:

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

* Not available on all models

In the U.S.
If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to *http://www.safercar.gov*; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from *http://www.safercar.gov*.

In Canada
If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Honda Canada Inc. and you may also inform Transport Canada.

If Transport Canada receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may lead to a recall and remedy campaign. However, Transport Canada cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Honda Canada Inc.

To contact Transport Canada's Defect Investigations and Recalls Division, you may call 1-800-333-0510. For more information on reporting safety defects or about motor vehicle safety, go to *http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety*.

Testing of Readiness Codes

Your vehicle has readiness code as part of the onboard self diagnostic system. Some States use these codes for testing to verify whether your vehicle's emissions components are working properly.
The codes may not be read properly if testing is performed just after the battery has gone dead or been disconnected.

To check if they are set, turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, without starting the engine. The malfunction indicator lamp will come on for several seconds. If it then goes off, the readiness codes are set. If it blinks five times, the readiness codes are not set.

If you are required to have your vehicle tested before the readiness codes are ready, prepare the vehicle for retesting by doing the following:

1. Fill the fuel tank to approximately 3/4 full.
2. Park the vehicle and leave the engine off for 6 hours or more.
3. Make sure the ambient temperature is between 40°F and 95°F (4°C and 35°C).
4. Start the engine without touching the accelerator pedal, and let it idle for 20 seconds.
5. Keep the vehicle in P. Increase the engine speed to 2,000 rpm, and hold it there for about 3 minutes.
6. Let the engine idle with your foot off the accelerator for 20 seconds.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Testing of Readiness Codes

The readiness codes are erased when the battery is disconnected, and set again only after several days of driving under a variety of conditions.

If a testing facility determines that the readiness codes are not set, you may be requested to return at a later date to complete the test.

If the testing facility determines the readiness codes are still not set, see a dealer.

7. Select a nearby, lightly traveled major highway where you can maintain a speed of 50 to 60 mph (80 to 97 km/h) for at least 20 minutes. Drive on the highway in D. Do not use cruise control. When traffic allows, drive for 90 seconds without moving the accelerator pedal. (Vehicle speed may vary slightly; this is okay.) If you cannot do this for a continuous 90 seconds because of traffic conditions, drive for at least 30 seconds, then repeat it two more times (for a total of 90 seconds).
8. Drive in city or suburban traffic for at least 10 minutes. When traffic conditions allow, let the vehicle coast for several seconds without using the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal.
9. Park the vehicle and leave the engine off for 30 minutes.

■ **U.S. Owners**
Your new vehicle is covered by these warranties:

New Vehicle Limited Warranty – covers your new vehicle, except for the emissions control systems and accessories, against defects in materials and workmanship.

Emissions Control Systems Defects Warranty and Emissions Performance Warranty – these two warranties cover your vehicle's emissions control systems. Time, mileage, and coverage are conditional. Please read your warranty booklet for exact information.

Seat Belt Limited Warranty – a seat belt that fails to function properly is covered by a limited warranty. Please read your warranty booklet for details.

Rust Perforation Limited Warranty – all exterior body panels are covered against rusting from the inside out for the specified time period, regardless of mileage.

Accessory Limited Warranty – Honda accessories are covered under this warranty. Time and mileage limits depend on the type of accessory and other factors. Please read your warranty booklet for details.

Replacement Parts Limited Warranty – covers all Honda replacement parts against defects in materials and workmanship.

Replacement Battery Limited Warranty – provides prorated coverage for a replacement battery purchased from your dealer.

Replacement Muffler Lifetime Limited Warranty – provides coverage for as long as the purchaser of the muffler owns the vehicle.

Restrictions and exclusions apply to all these warranties. Please read the Honda warranty information booklet that came with your vehicle for precise information on warranty coverages. Your vehicle's original tires are covered by their manufacturer. Tire warranty information is in a separate booklet.

■ Canadian Owners

Please refer to the warranty manual that came with your vehicle.

■ EPA Contact Information

An owner may obtain further information concerning emission warranties or report violations of the terms of the emission warranties by contacting:

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
Office of Transportation and Air Quality
Compliance Division, Light-Duty Vehicle Group
Attn: Warranty Complaints
2000 Traverwood Drive
Ann Arbor, MI 48105
Email: complianceinfo@epa.gov

■ **Service Express**
For electronic copies of service publications, you can purchase a subscription to Service Express. Visit *www.techinfo.honda.com* for pricing and options.

■ **For U.S. Owners**
Manuals can be purchased from Helm Incorporated. You can order a manual by phone at 1 (800) 782-4356 (credit card orders only), or online at *www.helminc.com*.

■ **For Canadian Owners**
Please contact a dealer to order any manuals that you may require.

Honda dealership personnel are trained professionals who should be able to deal with any problems you may encounter with your vehicle. If, however, you are faced with a problem that they cannot resolve to your satisfaction, contact Honda Client Relations/Services.

U.S. Owners
American Honda Motor Co., Inc.
Honda Automobile Customer Services
Mail Stop 500-2N-7A
1919 Torrance Blvd.
Torrance, CA 90501-2746
Tel: 1 (800) 999-1009

Canadian Owners
Honda Canada Inc.
Customer Relations
180 Honda Boulevard
Markham, ON
L6C 0H9
Tel: 1-888-9-HONDA-9
Fax: 1-877-939-0909
E-mail: Honda_cr@ch.honda.com

In Puerto Rico and the U.S. Virgin Islands
Bella International
P.O. Box 190816
San Juan, PR 00919-0816
Tel: 1 (787) 620-7546

Customer Service Information

When you call or write, please give us the following information:
- Vehicle Identification Number
  Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, and Transmission Number P. 638
- Date of purchase
- Odometer reading of your vehicle
- Your name, address, and telephone number
- A detailed description of the problem
- Name of the dealer who sold the vehicle to you

Numbers

4WD 502

A

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 514
Accessories and Modifications 600
Accessory Power Sockets 215
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) 97, 467
Adding the Coolant 564
Additives
  Coolant 563, 565
  Engine Oil 556
  Washer 569
Additives, Engine Oil 556
Adjusting
  Armrest 205
  Front Seats 197
  Head Restraints 201
  Mirrors 195
  Rear Seats 204
  Steering Wheel 194
  Temperature 120, 128
Adjusting the Sound 242, 280
Agile Handling Assist 496
Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System) 224
  Changing the Mode 225
  Defrosting the Windshield and Windows 225
  Dust and Pollen Filter 594
  Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode 225
  Sensor 228
  Synchronized Mode 227
  Using Automatic Climate Control 224
Air Pressure 582, 637
Airbags 49
  Advanced Airbags 55
  Airbag Care 62
  Event Data Recorder 0
  Front Airbags (SRS) 52
  Indicator 60, 85
  Passenger Airbag Off Indicator 61
  Sensors 49
  Side Airbags 56
  Side Curtain Airbags 58
All-Wheel Drive (AWD) 502
AM/FM Radio 244, 287
Android Auto™ 323
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 514
  Indicator 85
Apple CarPlay™ 320
Armrest 205
Audio Remote Controls 233
Audio System 230, 237, 258
  Adjusting the Sound 242, 280
  AM/FM Radio 244, 287
  Android Auto™ 323
  Apple CarPlay™ 320
  Audio/Information Screen 238, 259
  Changing the Home Screen Icon Layout .. 263
  Changing the Screen Interface 277
  Closing Apps 279
  Customizing the Meter 264
  Display Setup 243, 281
  Error Messages 327
  General Information 332
  Home Screen 270
  HondaLink® 312
  How to use Siri ® Eyes Free 257, 319
  iPod 246, 298
  Limitations for Manual Operation 282
  Menu Customize 278
  MP3/WMA/AAC 251, 307
  Pandora® 249, 305
  Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio 254, 310
  Playing SiriusXM® Radio 291
  Reactivating 232
  Recommended Devices 333
  Remote Controls 233
  Security Code 232
  Selecting an Audio Source 282
  Song By Voice™ (SBV) 301
  Status Area 276
  Theft Protection 232
  USB Flash Drives 251, 307, 333
  USB Port(s) 231
  Voice Control Operation 283
  Wallpaper Setup 240, 268
  Wi-Fi Connection 317
Audio/Information Screen 238, 259
Authorized Manuals 646

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 146
Customize 147
Auto High-Beam System 181
Automatic Brake Hold 512
Indicator 82, 512
Automatic Intermittent Wipers 186
Automatic Lighting 178
Average Fuel Economy 119, 124
Average Speed 124
AWD (All-Wheel Drive) 502

B

Battery 590
Charging System Indicator 83, 621
Jump Starting 613
Maintenance (Checking the Battery) 590
Maintenance (Replacing) 592
Belts (Seat) 40
Beverage Holders 213
Blind spot information (BSI) System 497
Bluetooth® Audio 254, 310
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® 373, 396
Booster Seats (For Children) 75
Brake System 508
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 514
Automatic Brake Hold 512
Brake Assist System 515
Fluid 568
Foot Brake 511
Indicator (Red) 80, 623, 624
Parking Brake 508
Brightness Control (Instrument Panel) 188
Bulb Replacement 570
Brake/Taillight, Rear Turn Signal Light and Rear Side Marker Lights 574
Fog Lights 572
Front Turn Signal/ Front Side Marker Lights 574
Headlights 570
High-Mount Brake Light 576
Parking/Daytime Running Lights 574
Rear License Plate Light 576
Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights 574
Taillight and Back-Up Lights 575
Bulb Specifications 636

C

Carbon Monoxide Gas 76
Cargo Hook 218
Carrying Cargo 435, 437
Certification Label 638
Changing Bulbs 570
Charging System Indicator 83, 621
Child Safety 63
Childproof Door Locks 145
Child Seat 63
Booster Seats 75
Child Seat for Infants 65
Child Seat for Small Children 66
Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt 71
Larger Children 74
Rear-facing Child Seat 65
Selecting a Child Seat 67
Childproof Door Locks 145
Cleaning the Exterior 597
Cleaning the Interior 595
Climate Control System 224
Changing the Mode 224
Defrosting the Windshield and Windows 225
Dust and Pollen Filter 594
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode 225
Sensors 228
Synchronized Mode 227
Using Automatic Climate Control 224
Clock 132
CMBS™ (Collision Mitigation Braking System™) 516
Coat Hook 217
Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) 516
Compact Spare Tire 603, 637
Compass 430
Continuously Variable Transmission 454
Creeping 454
Fluid 567
Kickdown 454
Operating the Shift Lever 23, 456
Shift Lever Does Not Move 616

Shifting 455
Controls 131
Coolant (Engine) 563, 565
Adding the Coolant 564
Adding to the Radiator 566
Adding to the Reserve Tank 565
Overheating 617
Creeping (Continuously Variable Transmission) 454
Cross Traffic Monitor 527
Cruise Control 458, 461
Indicator 93
Cup Holders 213
Customer Service Information 647
Customized Features 337
Customizing the Auto Door Locking/ Unlocking Setting 147

D

Daytime Running Lights 184
Dead Battery 613
Defaulting All the Settings 369
Defrosting the Windshield and Windows 225
Detachable Anchor 46
Devices that Emit Radio Waves 640
Dimming
Headlights 177
Rearview Mirror 195
Dipstick (Engine Oil) 557
Directional Signals (Turn Signals) 176
Display Setup 243, 281
Display/Information Button 121
Door Mirrors 196
Doors 134
Auto Door Locking 146
Auto Door Unlocking 146
Door Open Indicator 38, 87
Keys 134
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside 144
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside 137
Lockout Prevention System 143
DOT Tire Quality Grading 584
Driver Information Interface 121
Driver's Seat Lumbar Support 197
Driving 433
Braking 508
Continuously Variable Transmission 454
Cruise Control 458, 461
Off-Highway Driving Guidelines 444
Shifting Gear 455
Starting the Engine 446, 448
Driving Position Memory System 192
Dust and Pollen Filter 594

E

Eco Assist System 9
ECON Button 457
Elapsed Time 124
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System
Indicator 88, 625
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 494
Emergency 632
Emissions Testing (Readiness Codes) 642
Engine 638
Coolant 563, 565
Jump Starting 613
Oil 556
Starting 446, 448
Switch Buzzer 171, 174
Engine Coolant 563, 565
Adding the Coolant 564
Adding to the Radiator 566
Adding to the Reserve Tank 565
Overheating 617
Temperature Gauge 117
Engine Oil 556
Adding 559
Checking 557
Displaying Oil Life 543, 548
Low Oil Pressure Indicator 82, 621
Recommended Engine Oil 556
ENGINE START/STOP Button 172
EPS (Electric Power Steering) System 625
Exhaust Gas Hazard (Carbon Monoxide) .. 76
Exterior Care (Cleaning) 597
Exterior Mirrors 196

F

Features 229
Filters
- Dust and Pollen 594
- Oil 560

Flat Tire 603
Floor Mats 596
Fluids
- Brake 568
- Continuously Variable Transmission 567
- Engine Coolant 563, 565
- Windshield Washer 569

FM/AM Radio 244, 287
Fog Light Indicator 91
Folding Down the Rear Seats 204
Foot Brake 511
Front Airbags (SRS) 52
Front Seat Heaters 221
Front Seats 197
- Adjusting 197

Front Sensor Camera 465
Fuel 25, 533
- Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions 536
- Gauge 117
- Instant Fuel Economy 119, 128
- Low Fuel Indicator 84
- Range 119, 124
- Recommendation 533
- Refueling 533

Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions 536
Fuel Fill Door 534
Fuses 628
- Inspecting and Changing 631
- Locations 628, 629

G

Gasoline (Fuel)
- Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions 536
- Gauge 117
- Information 533
- Instant Fuel Economy 119, 128
- Low Fuel Indicator 84
- Refueling 533

Gauges 117
Gear Shift Lever Positions
- Continuously Variable Transmission 455

Glass (care) 595, 598
Glove Box 209

H

Handling the Unexpected 601
HandsFreeLink® (HFL) 373, 396
- Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History 386, 409
- Caller's ID Information 384
- Displaying Messages 424
- HFL Buttons 373, 396
- HFL Menus 375, 399
- HFL Status Display 374, 398
- In Case of Emergency 428
- Limitations for Manual Operation 374, 398
- Making a Call 390, 417
- Options During a Call 395, 421
- Phone Setup 379, 404
- Phonebook Phonetic Modification 413
- Receiving a Call 394, 420
- Receiving a Text Message/E-mail 422
- Ring Tone 384, 408
- Selecting a Mail Account 423
- Speed Dial 387, 410
- To Clear the System 385
- To Set Up Text Message/E-mail Options 407

Hazard Warning Button 4
HD Radio™ 287
Head Restraints 201
Headlights 177
- Aiming 570
- Auto High-Beam System 181
- Automatic Operation 178
- Dimming 177, 184
- Operating 177

Heated Door Mirror Button 190
Heated Steering Wheel 220
Heated Windshield Button 191
Heaters (Front Seat) 221
Heaters (Seat) 222
Heating and Cooling System
- Dust and Pollen Filter 594

HFL (HandsFreeLink®) 373, 396
High Beam Indicator 90
Hill Start Assist System 447, 452

HomeLink® Universal Transceiver 370
Honda Sensing™ 26
HondaLink® 312

I

Identification Numbers 638
Engine and Transmission 638
Vehicle Identification 638
Ignition Switch 171
Illumination Control 188
Knob 188
Immobilizer System 161
Immobilizer System Indicator 91
Indicators 80
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) 98, 467
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 85
Automatic Brake Hold 82, 512
Blind spot information (BSI) 498
Brake Depressing 94
Charging System 83, 621
Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) 99, 100, 101
Cruise Control 93, 459, 462
Cruise Main 93, 458, 461
Door Open 38, 87
ECON Mode 93, 457
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System 88, 625
Fog Light 91
High Beam 90
Immobilizer System 91
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 98, 99
Lights On 90
Low Fuel 84
Low Oil Pressure 82, 621
Low Tire Pressure/TPMS 89, 506
Maintenance Minder 93, 543
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 83, 622
Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) 81
Parking Brake and Brake System (Red) 80, 623, 624
Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) 95, 96
Seat Belt Reminder 42, 84
Security System Alarm 92
Shift Lever Position 83
Supplemental Restraint System 60, 85
System Message 90
Tailgate Open 87
Transmission 84
Turn Signal 90
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) System 86, 494
VSA® OFF 87, 495
Information 635
Information Display 118
Instant Fuel Economy 119, 128
Instrument Panel 79
Brightness Control 188
Interior Lights 206
Interior Rearview Mirror 195
iPod 246, 298

J

Jack (Wheel Nut Wrench) 606
Jump Starting 613

K

Key Number Tag 136
Keyless Lockout Prevention 143
Keys 134
Lockout Prevention 143
Master Keys 134
Number Tag 136
Rear Door Won't Open 145
Remote Transmitter 141
Types and Functions 134
Valet Key 135
Won't Turn 29
Kickdown (Continuously Variable Transmission) 454

L

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 486
LaneWatch™ 500
Language (HFL) 374, 398
LATCH (Child Seats) 68, 72
Lights 177, 570
Automatic 178
Bulb Replacement 570

Daytime Running Lights 184
Fog Lights 180
High Beam Indicator 90
Interior 206
Light Switches 177
Lights On Indicator 90
Turn Signals 176
Load Limits 437
Locking/Unlocking 134
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 146
Childproof Door Locks 145
From Inside 144
From Outside 137
Keys 134
Using a Key 142
Lockout Prevention System 143
Low Battery Charge 621
Low Fuel Indicator 84
Low Oil Pressure Indicator 82, 621
Low Smart Entry Remote Signal Strength 136
Lower Anchors 68, 72
Luggage (Maximum Load Limit) 437
Lumbar Support 198
Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch 198

M

Maintenance 539
Adding the Coolant 564
Battery 590
Brake Fluid 568
Cleaning 595
Coolant 563, 565
Maintenance Minder™ 543
Oil 557
Precautions 540
Radiator 566
Remote Transmitter 592
Replacing Light Bulbs 570
Safety 541
Service Items 545, 550
Tires 581
Transmission Fluid 567
Under the Hood 553
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 83, 622
Map Lights 207
Maximum Load Limit 437
Meters, Gauges 117
Mirrors 195
Adjusting 195
Door 196
Exterior 196
Interior Rearview 195
Modifications (and Accessories) 600
Moonroof 167
MP3 ..... 251, 307
Multi-View Rear Camera 531

N

Numbers (Identification) 638

O

Odometer 118, 122
Off-Highway Driving Guidelines 444
Oil (Engine) 556
Adding 559
Checking 557
Displaying Oil Life 543, 548
Low Oil Pressure Indicator 82, 621
Recommended Engine Oil 556
Viscosity 556
Open Source Licenses 336
Opening/Closing
Hood 555
Moonroof 167
Power Windows 164
Tailgate 150
Outside Temperature Display 120, 128
Overheating 617

P

Pandora® 249, 305
Panic Mode 163
Panoramic Roof 168
Parking 526
Parking Brake 508
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber) 81
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red) 80, 623, 624
Passenger Airbag Off Indicator 61

Passing Indicators 177
Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio 254, 310
Power Tailgate 152
Power Windows 164
Precautions While Driving 453
  Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle 453
  Rain 453
Pregnant Women 47
Puncture (Tire) 603

R

Radiator 566
Radio (FM/AM) 244, 287
Radio (SiriusXM®) 291
Radio Data System (RDS) 245, 289
Range 119, 124
RDS (Radio Data System) 245, 289
Readiness Codes (Emissions Testing) 642
Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System™ 502
Rear Seat Heaters 222
Rear Seats (Folding Down) 204
Rearview Mirror 195
Refueling 533
  Fuel Gauge 117
  Gasoline 533, 636
  Low Fuel Indicator 84
Regulations 506, 584, 640
Remote Transmitter 141
Replacement
  Battery 592
  Bulbs 570
  Fuses 628, 629
  Rear Wiper Blade Rubber 579
  Tires 587
  Wiper Blade Rubber 577
Reporting Safety Defects 641
Resetting a Trip Meter 119, 123
Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) 482
  On and Off 483

S

Safe Driving 33
Safety Check 38
Safety Labels 77
Safety Message 1
Seat Belts 40
  Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor 45
  Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners 43
  Checking 48
  Detachable Anchor 46
  Fastening 44
  Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt 71
  Pregnant Women 47
  Reminder 42
  Warning Indicator 42, 84
Seat Heaters 222
Seats 197
  Adjusting 197
  Driver's Seat Lumbar Support 197
  Front Seat Heaters 221
  Front Seats 197
  Rear Seats 204
  Seat Heaters 222
Security System 161
  Security System Alarm Indicator 92
Select Lever 23, 455
  Operation 23, 456
  Releasing 616
  Won't Move 616
Selecting a Child Seat 67
Selector Knob (Audio) 237
Setting the Clock 132
Shift Lever 23, 455
Shift Lever Position Indicator 83, 456
Shifting (Transmission) 455
Shoulder Anchor 45
Side Airbags 56
Side Curtain Airbags 58
Siri® Eyes Free 257, 319
SiriusXM® Radio 291
Smart Entry System 137
Snow Tires 589
Song By Voice™ (SBV) 301
Spare Tire 603, 637
Spark Plugs 636
Specifications 636
Specified Fuel 533, 636

Speedometer 117
SRS Airbags (Airbags) 52
Starting the Engine 446, 448
Does Not Start 610
Engine Switch Buzzer 171, 174
Jump Starting 613
Steering Wheel 194
Adjusting 194
Stopping 526
Summer Tires 589
Sunglasses Holder 219
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) 52
Switches (Around the Steering Wheel) 4, 5, 171
System Message Indicator 90

T

Tachometer 117
Tailgate 150
Tailgate Open Indicator 87
Unable to Open 633
Temperature
Outside Temperature Display 120, 128
Temperature Sensor 120, 128
Theft Protection 232
Time (Setting) 132
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 503
Button 503
Indicator 89
Tires 581
Air Pressure 582, 637
Checking and Maintaining 581
Inspection 581
Labeling 582
Puncture (Flat Tire) 603
Regulations 584
Rotation 588
Spare Tire 603, 637
Summer 589
Tire Chains 589
Wear Indicators 586
Winter 589
Tonneau Cover 223
Tools 602
Towing a Trailer 439
Equipment and Accessories 440
Load Limits 439
Towing Your Vehicle 443
Behind a Motorhome 443
Emergency 632
TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) 503
Button 503
Indicator 89
Transmission 455
Continuously Variable 455
Fluid 567
Number 638
Shift Lever Position Indicator 83, 456
TRIP Knob 118, 122
Trip Meter 118, 122
Troubleshooting 601
Blown Fuse 628, 629
Brake Pedal Vibrates 30
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door 30
Emergency Towing 632
Engine Won't Start 610
Noise When Braking 31
Overheating 617
Puncture/Flat Tire 603
Rear Door Won't Open 30, 145
Select Lever Won't Move 616
Warning Indicators 80
Turbo Engine Vehicle 537
Turn Signals 176
Indicators (Instrument Panel) 90

U

Under-floor Storage Area 212
Unlocking the Doors 137
Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside 15
USB Flash Drives 251, 307, 333
USB Port(s) 231

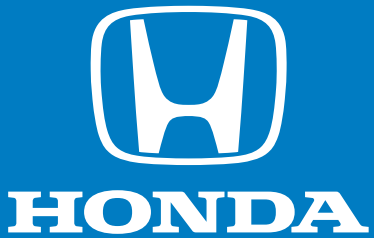
V

Valet Key 135
Vanity Mirrors 7
Vehicle Identification Number 638

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) 494
Off Button 495
Off Indicator 87
System Indicator 86
Viscosity (Oil) 556, 637
Voice Control Operation 283
Audio Commands 285
Climate Control Commands 286
General Commands 286
Music Search Commands 286
On Screen Commands 286
Phone Commands 285
Useful Commands 285
Voice Portal Screen 284
Voice Recognition 283
VSA® (Vehicle Stability Assist) 494

W

Wallpaper 240, 268
Warning and Information Messages 102, 103
Warning Indicator On/Blinking 621
Warning Labels 77
Warranties (Warranty Manual provided separately) 644
Watts 636
WAV 251
Wear Indicators (Tire) 586
Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle) 606
Wi-Fi Connection 317
Window Washers 185
Adding/Refilling Fluid 569
Switch 185
Windows (Opening and Closing) 164
Windshield 185
Cleaning 595, 598
Defrosting/Defogging 225
Washer Fluid 569
Wiper Blades 577
Wipers and Washers 185
Winter Tires 589
Snow Tires 589
Tire Chains 589
Wipers and Washers 185
Automatic Intermittent Wipers 186
Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades 577
Front 185
Rear 187
WMA 251, 307
Worn Tires 581



owners.honda.com (U.S.)
myhonda.ca (Canada)

31TLA601
OM-11209
00X31-TLA-6011

2017 Honda CR-V Owner's Manual
©2019 Honda Motor Co., Ltd. — All Rights Reserved

Printed in U.S.A.

CR-V

HONDA
The Power of Dreams

2018
OWNER'S MANUAL

⚠WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-road vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to *www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle*.

Event Data Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. **The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:**

- **How various systems in your vehicle were operating;**
- **Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;**
- **How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,**
- **How fast the vehicle was traveling.**

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

The data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

Service Diagnostic Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance. The data can be used to verify emissions law requirements and/or help technicians diagnose and solve service problems. It may also be combined with data from other sources for research purposes, but it remains confidential. Some diagnostic and maintenance information is uploaded to Honda upon vehicle start up.

California Perchlorate Contamination Prevention Act

The airbags, seat belt tensioners, and CR type batteries in this vehicle may contain perchlorate materials - special handling may apply. See *www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate/*

As you read this manual, you will find information that is preceded by a NOTICE symbol. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Software End User License Agreement

Your vehicle comes equipped with software, which is governed by the End User License Agreement in Owner's Manual, and which contains a binding arbitration clause. Please refer to the End User License Agreement for the terms and conditions governing your use of the installed software, as well as the applications, services, functions, and content provided through the software. Your use of the installed software will serve as your consent to the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement.
You may opt out within 30 days of your initial use of the Software by sending a signed, written notice to HONDA at American Honda Motor Co., Inc. Honda Automobile Customer Services Mail Stop 100-5E-8A, 1919 Torrance Blvd. Torrance, CA 90501-2746.

Privacy Notice

This vehicle may share location and usage information. To manage this setting, visit *www.hondalink.com/vehicle-data-choices*.

A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgment.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol ⚠ and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

⚠DANGER	You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠WARNING	You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠CAUTION	You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

Images throughout this owner's manual (including the front cover) represent features and equipment that are available on some, but not all, models. Your particular model may not have some of these features.

This owner's manual is for vehicles sold in the United States and Canada.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Safe Driving P. 33

For Safe Driving P. 34 Seat Belts P. 40 Airbags P. 49

Instrument Panel P. 79

Indicators P. 80 Gauges and Displays P. 118

Controls P. 131

Clock P. 132 Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 134
Moonroof* P. 167 Panoramic Roof*1 P. 168
Adjusting the Seats P. 197

Features P. 231

Audio System P. 232 Audio System Basic Operation P. 239, 260
Customized Features P. 351 HomeLink® Universal Transceiver* P. 384

Driving P. 447

Before Driving P. 448 Towing a Trailer P. 453
Parking Your Vehicle P. 542 Multi-View Rear Camera P. 547

Maintenance P. 555

Before Performing Maintenance P. 556 Maintenance Minder™ P. 559
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 593
Climate Control System Maintenance P. 610

Handling the Unexpected P. 617

Tools P. 618 If a Tire Goes Flat P. 619
Overheating P. 633 Indicator, Coming On/Blinking P. 637
When You Cannot Open the Tailgate P. 649

Information P. 651

Specifications P. 652 Identification Numbers P. 654
Emissions Testing P. 658 Warranty Coverages P. 660

Contents

Child Safety P. 63
Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 76
Safety Labels P. 77

Opening and Closing the Tailgate P. 150
Security System P. 161
Opening and Closing the Windows P. 164
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 171
Adjusting the Mirrors P. 195
Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items P. 207
Climate Control System P. 226

Audio Error Messages P. 329
General Information on the Audio System P. 334
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® P. 387, 410
Compass* P. 444

Off-Highway Driving Guidelines P. 458
When Driving P. 460
Braking P. 524
Refueling P. 549
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions P. 552
Turbo Engine Vehicle* P. 553

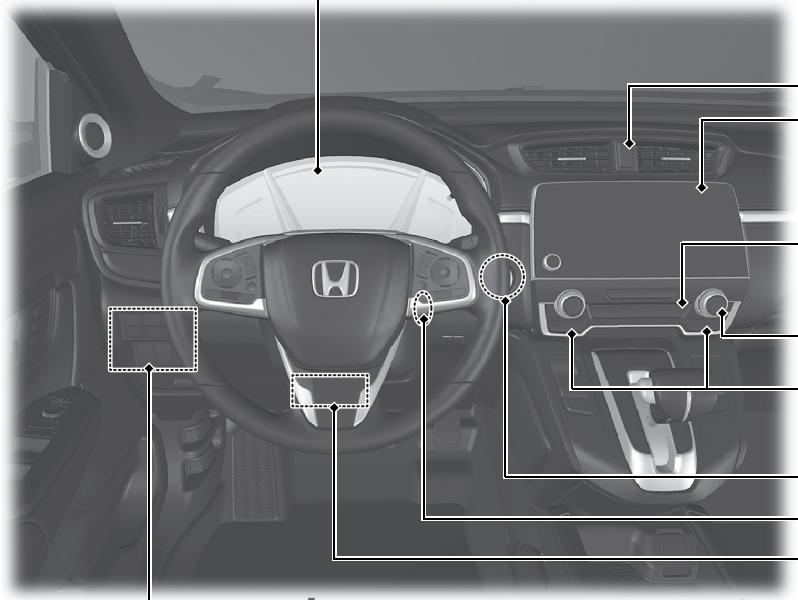
Maintenance Under the Hood P. 569
Replacing Light Bulbs P. 586
Checking and Maintaining Tires P. 597
Battery P. 606
Remote Transmitter Care P. 608
Cleaning P. 611
Accessories and Modifications P. 616

Engine Does Not Start P. 626
Jump Starting P. 629
Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 632
Fuses P. 644
Emergency Towing P. 648
Refueling P. 650

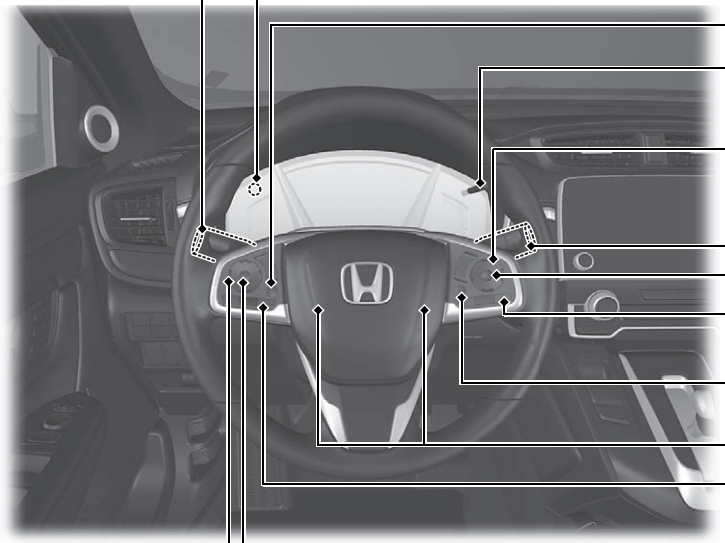
Devices that Emit Radio Waves P. 656
Reporting Safety Defects P. 657
Authorized Manuals P. 662
Customer Service Information P. 663

Quick Reference Guide P. 4
Safe Driving P. 33
Instrument Panel P. 79
Controls P. 131
Features P. 231
Driving P. 447
Maintenance P. 555
Handling the Unexpected P. 617
Information P. 651
Index P. 665

Visual Index



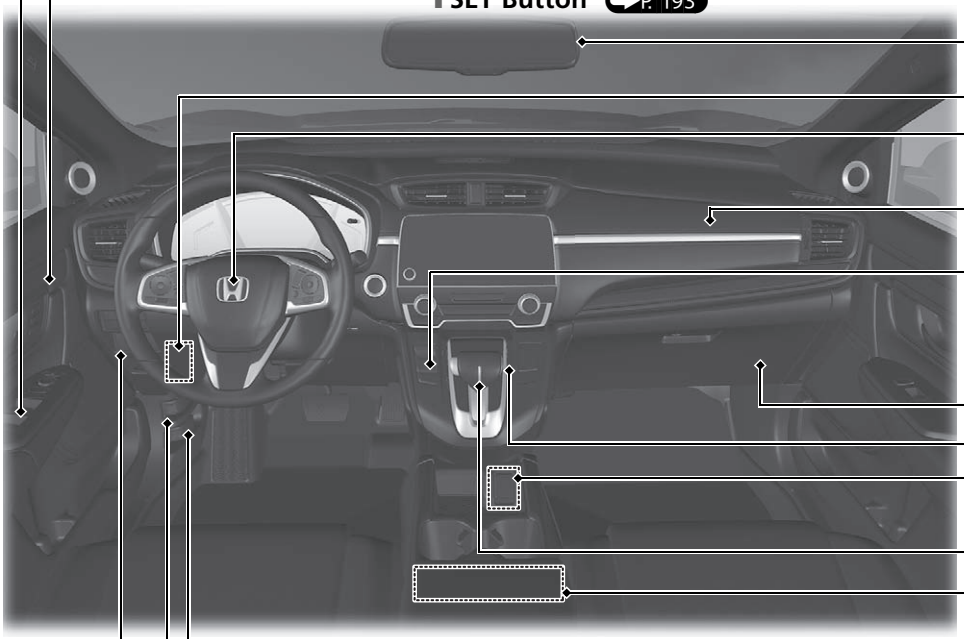
- System Indicators P. 80
- Gauges P. 118
- Information Display* P. 119
- Driver Information Interface* P. 122
- Hazard Warning Button
- Audio System P. 239, 260
- Navigation System*
  See the Navigation System Manual
- Rear Window Defogger P. 190
- Heated Door Mirror Button* P. 190
- Climate Control System P. 226
- Front Seat Heater Buttons* P. 223
- ENGINE START/STOP Button* P. 172
- Ignition Switch* P. 171
- Steering Wheel Adjustments P. 194
- Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) Button* P. 518
- (Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) System OFF) Button P. 510
- Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Button* P. 498
- Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) OFF Button* P. 536
- Heated Windshield Button* P. 191
- Power Tailgate Button* P. 154



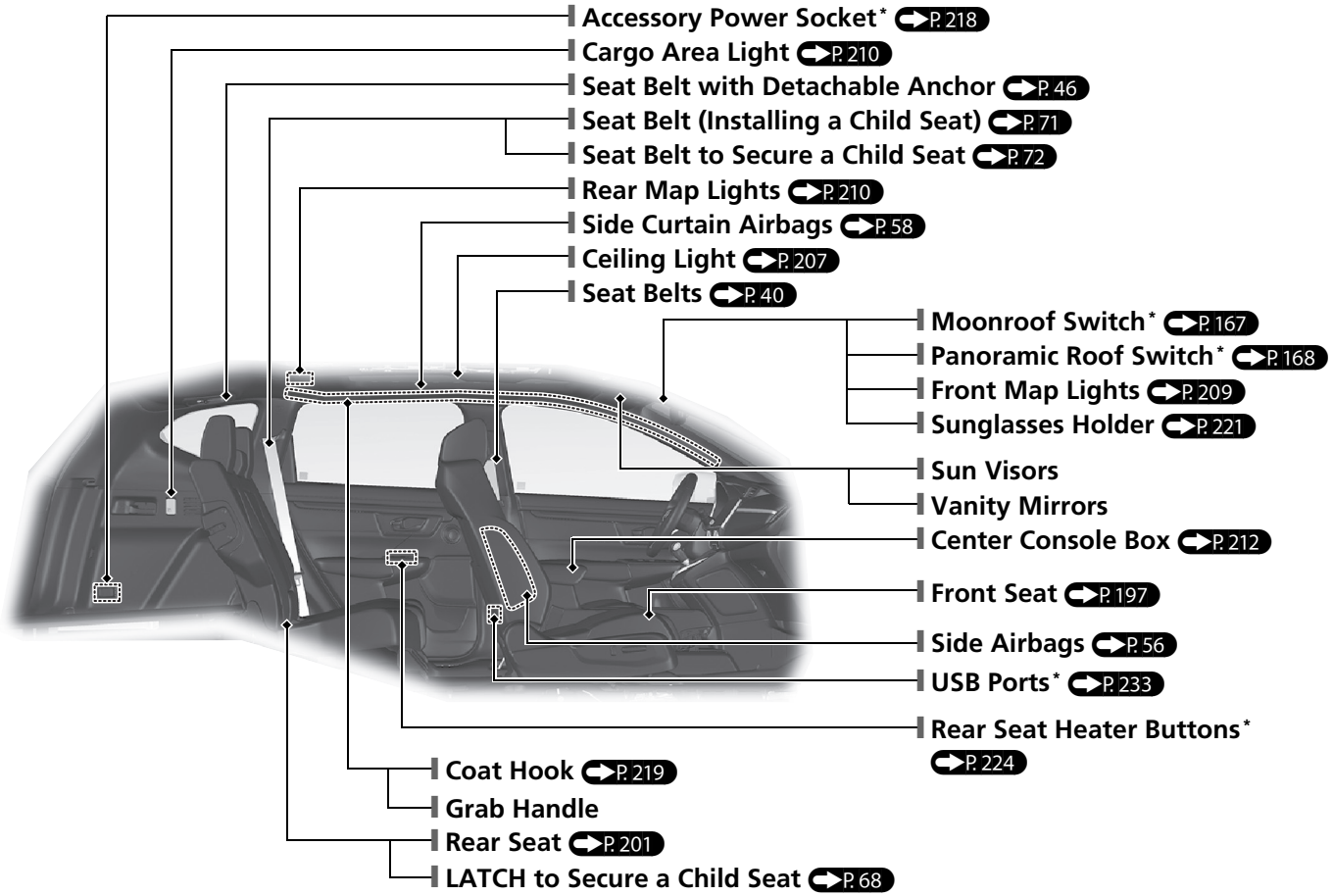
- Headlights/Turn Signals P. 176, 177
- Fog Lights* P. 180
- LaneWatch™* P. 515
- Km/Mile Change Knob* P. 118
- (Display/Information) Button* P. 122
- (TRIP) Knob P. 119, 123
- Brightness Control P. 188
- Cruise Control Buttons* P. 472, 475
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) Buttons* P. 481
- Wipers/Washers P. 185
- Interval Button* P. 491
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Button* P. 501
- Heated Steering Wheel Button* P. 222
- Horn (Press an area around .)
- Navigation System Voice Control Buttons* See the Navigation System Manual
- *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® System Voice Control Buttons P. 387, 410
- SOURCE Button* P. 235
- ENTER Button* P. 122, 235
- + / − / ◀ / ▶ Buttons* P. 235
- ▲ / ▼ / ◀ / ▶ Buttons* P. 122, 235

* Not available on all models

Visual Index

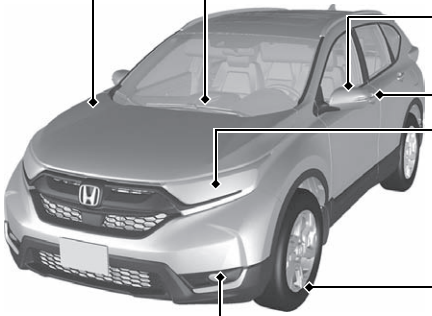


Power Window Switches P. 164
Door Mirror Controls P. 196
Master Door Lock Switch P. 145
Memory Buttons* P. 193
SET Button* P. 193
Rearview Mirror P. 195
Interior Fuse Box P. 645
Driver's Front Airbag P. 52
Passenger's Front Airbag P. 52
Electric Parking Brake Switch P. 524
Automatic Brake Hold Button P. 528
Glove Box P. 211
ECON Button P. 471
Accessory Power Socket P. 217
Shift Lever P. 469
Accessory Power Socket P. 217
USB Port(s) P. 233
Hood Release Handle P. 571
Fuel Fill Door Release Handle P. 550
Driver's Pocket

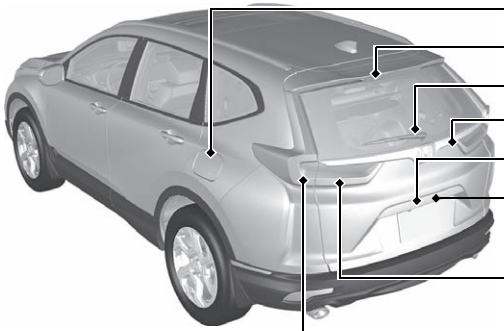


* Not available on all models

Visual Index



Maintenance Under the Hood P. 569
Windshield Wipers P. 185, 593
Power Door Mirrors P. 196
Side Turn Signal Lights* P. 176, 590
Door Lock/Unlock Control P. 137
Headlights P. 177, 586
Front Turn Signal/Front Side Marker Lights P. 176, 177, 590
Parking/Daytime Running Lights P. 177, 184, 590
Tires P. 597, 619
Fog Lights* P. 180, 588



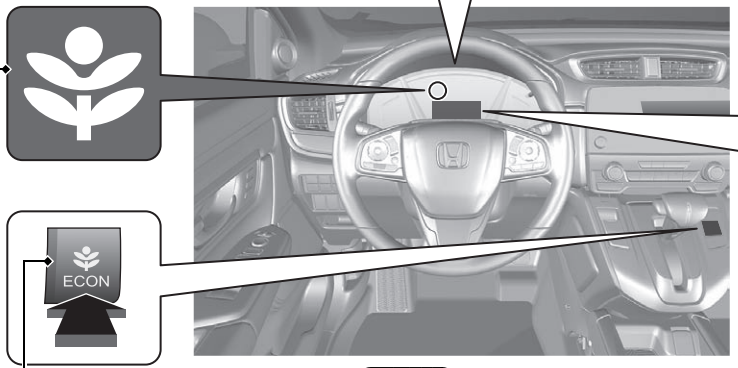
How to Refuel P. 550
High-Mount Brake Light P. 592
Rear Wiper P. 187, 595
Opening/Closing the Tailgate P. 150
Multi-View Rear Camera P. 547
Rear License Plate Light P. 592
Tailgate Release Button P. 159
Taillights P. 591
Back-Up Lights P. 591
Brake/Taillights P. 590
Rear Turn Signal Lights P. 590
Rear Side Marker Lights P. 590

Eco Assist® System P. 471

Ambient Meter

- The color of the ambient meter changes to green to indicate that the vehicle is being driven in a fuel efficient manner.





ECON Button P. 471
Helps maximize fuel economy.

ECON Mode Indicator P. 93
Comes on when ECON mode is on.





Models with driver information interface

The message is displayed for a few seconds when the **ECON** button is pressed.

* Not available on all models

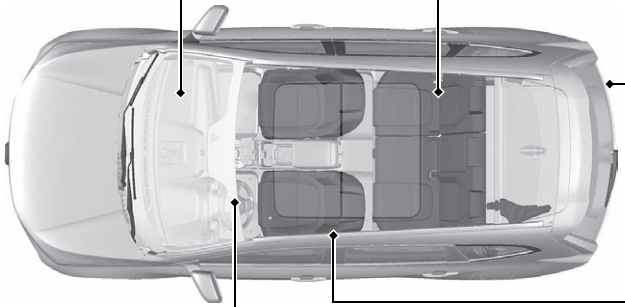
Safe Driving P. 33

Airbags P. 49

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

Child Safety P. 63

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Smaller children should be properly restrained in a forward-facing child seat.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child seat.



Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 76

- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

Seat Belts P. 40

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.



Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.

Before Driving Checklist P. 448

- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.

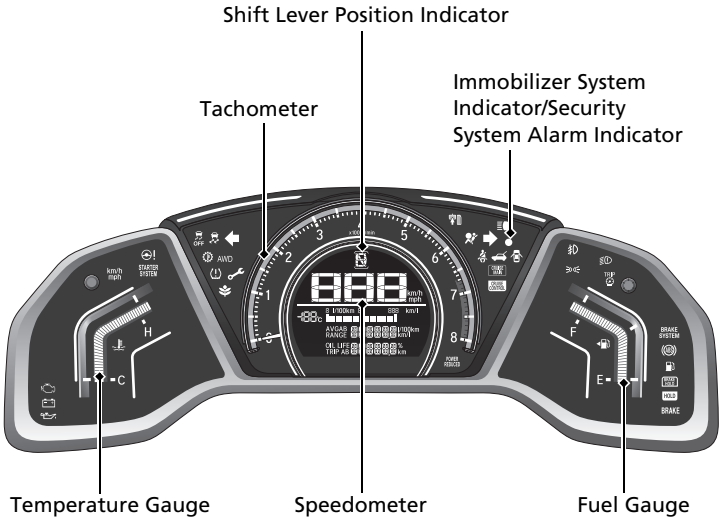
Instrument Panel P. 79

Gauges P. 118/Information Display* P. 119/ Driver Information Interface* P. 122/System Indicators P. 80

Models with information display

System Indicators

- Malfunction Indicator Lamp
- Low Oil Pressure Indicator
- Charging System Indicator
- Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator
- Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) System Indicator
- VSA® **OFF** Indicator
- Door Open Indicator
- Tailgate Open Indicator
- POWER REDUCED Power Reduced Indicator
- BRAKE HOLD Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator
- HOLD Automatic Brake Hold Indicator
- BRAKE Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)
- BRAKE SYSTEM Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)



System Indicators

- STARTER SYSTEM Starter System Indicator
- ECON Mode Indicator
- Low Tire Pressure/ TPMS Indicator

Lights Indicators

- Lights On Indicator
- High Beam Indicator

System Indicators

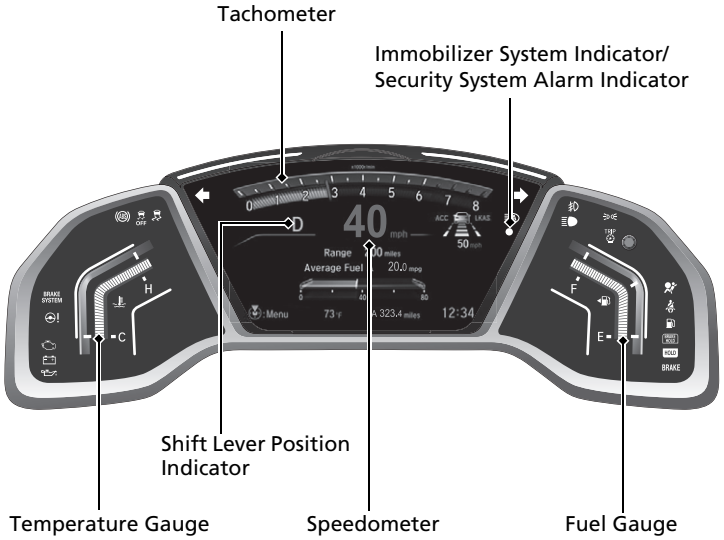
- Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators
- Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator
- Low Fuel Indicator
- Seat Belt Reminder Indicator
- Supplemental Restraint System Indicator
- CRUISE MAIN **CRUISE MAIN** Indicator
- CRUISE CONTROL **CRUISE CONTROL** Indicator
- Brake Depressing Indicator
- Maintenance Minder Indicator
- Transmission Temperature Indicator
- AWD All-wheel drive (**AWD**) Indicator*

* Not available on all models

Models with driver information interface

System Indicators

- Malfunction Indicator Lamp
- Low Oil Pressure Indicator
- Charging System Indicator
- Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator
- Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) System Indicator
- VSA® **OFF** Indicator
- Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator
- Automatic Brake Hold Indicator
- ECON Mode Indicator
- Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)
- Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)



System Indicators

- System Message Indicator
- Low Tire Pressure/ TPMS Indicator
- Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators

Lights Indicators

- Lights On Indicator
- High Beam Indicator
- Fog Light Indicator*
- Auto High-beam System Indicator*

System Indicators

- Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator
- Low Fuel Indicator
- Seat Belt Reminder Indicator
- Supplemental Restraint System Indicator
- **CRUISE MAIN** Indicator*
- **CRUISE CONTROL** Indicator*
- Adaptive Cruise Control (**ACC**) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) Indicator (Amber/Green)*
- Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Indicator*
- Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) Indicator*
- Lane Keeping Assist System (**LKAS**) Indicator (Amber/ Green)*
- Blind Spot Information (BSI) Indicator*

Controls P. 131

Clock P. 132

Models with color audio system



1. Press and hold the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to change hour, then press.
3. Rotate to change minute, then press.
4. Select **SET**, then press.

These indications are used to show how to operate the Selector knob.
- Rotate to select.
- Press to enter.

Models with navigation system

The audio system receives signals from GPS satellites, updating the clock automatically.

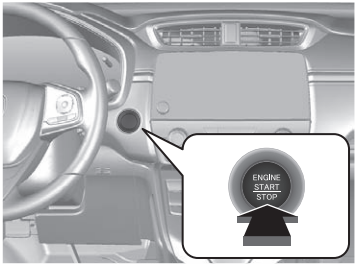
Models with Display Audio



1. Select the HOME (HOME) icon, then select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock**, then **Clock Adjustment**.
3. Touch the respective ▲ / ▼ icon to adjust the hours or minutes up or down.
4. Select **OK**.

ENGINE START/STOP Button* P. 172

Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.



* Not available on all models

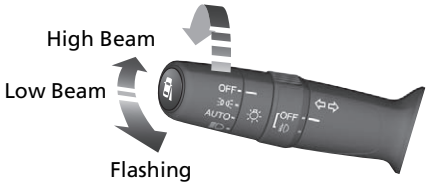
Turn Signals P. 176

Turn Signal Control Lever



Lights P. 177

Light Control Switches

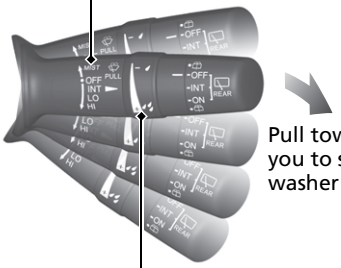


Wipers and Washers

P. 185

Wiper/Washer Control Lever

MIST
OFF
AUTO[*1]: Wiper speed varies automatically
INT[*2]: Low speed with intermittent
LO: Low speed wipe
HI: High speed wipe



Pull toward you to spray washer fluid.

Adjustment Ring

−: Low Sensitivity[*1]
− : Lower speed, fewer sweeps[*2]
+: High Sensitivity[*1]
+ : Higher speed, more sweeps[*2]

*1: Models with automatic intermittent wipers
*2: Models without automatic intermittent wipers

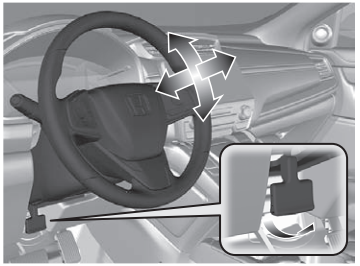
Models with automatic intermittent wipers

AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windshield
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

Steering Wheel P. 194

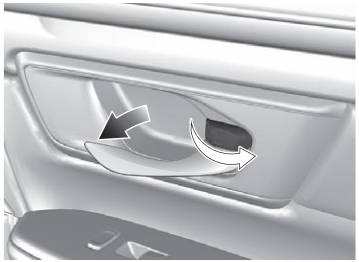
- To adjust, pull the adjustment lever towards you, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.



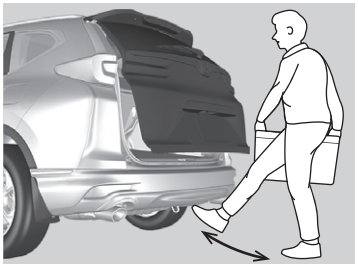
Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside

P. 144

- Pull either front door inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.

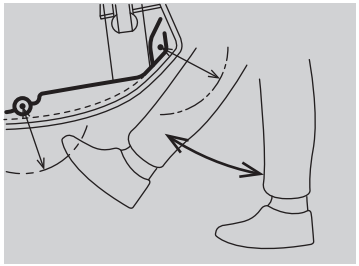


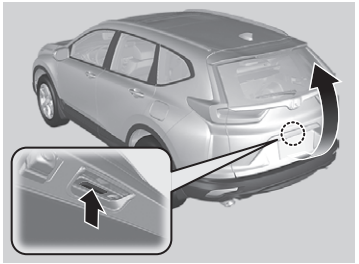
Tailgate P. 150



Models with Hands Free Access

Use a forward and back kicking motion under the center of the rear bumper to open or close the power tailgate while carrying the smart entry remote.





Models without smart entry system

- With all the doors unlocked, press the tailgate release button, and lift open the tailgate.

Models with smart entry system

- Press the tailgate release button to unlock and open the tailgate when you have the smart entry remote on you.

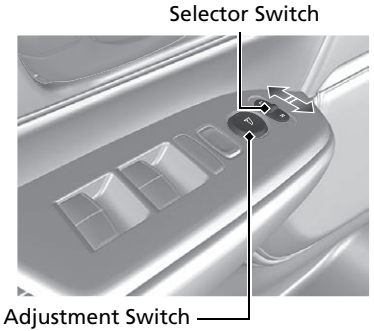
Models with power tailgate

- Press the power tailgate button on the driver side control panel, or press the remote transmitter to unlock and open the tailgate when you have the smart entry remote on you.

Power Door Mirrors

P. 196

- With the ignition switch in ON II*1, move the selector switch to **L** or **R**.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.

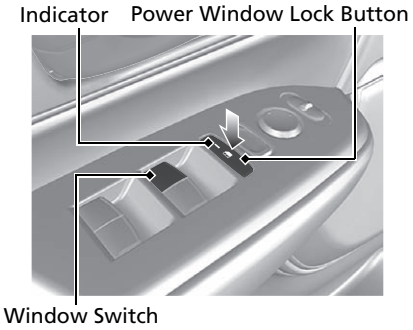


*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Power Windows

P. 164

- With the ignition switch in ON II*1, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the on position (indicator on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.

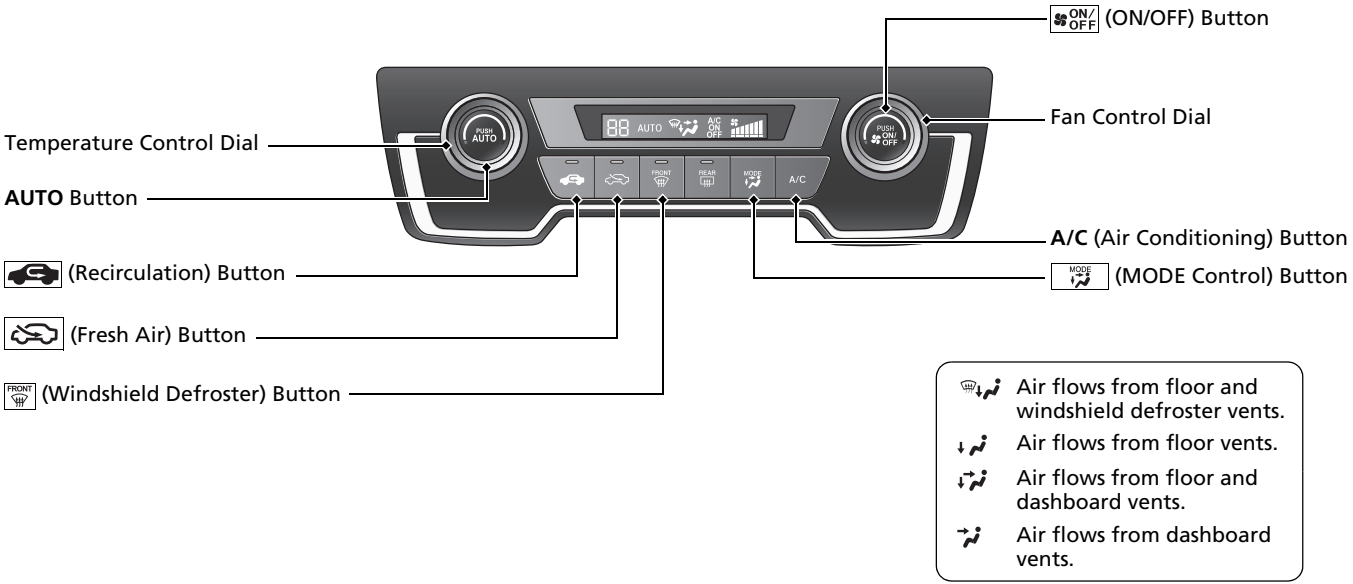


*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Climate Control System P. 226

- Press the **AUTO** button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the ON/OFF button to turn the system on or off.
- Press the FRONT button to defrost the windshield.

Models without SYNC button



Models with SYNC button



Audio/Information Screen



SYNC (Synchronization) Button

CLIMATE (CLIMATE) Button

Driver's side Temperature Control Dial

Passenger's side Temperature Control Dial

AUTO Button

ON/OFF (ON/OFF) Button

(Recirculation) Button

(Fresh Air) Button

FRONT (Windshield Defroster) Button

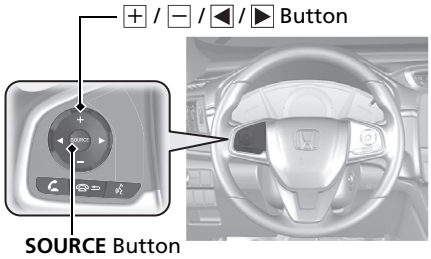
- Air flows from floor and windshield defroster vents.
- Air flows from floor vents.
- Air flows from floor and dashboard vents.
- Air flows from dashboard vents.

Features P. 231

Audio Remote Controls

P. 235

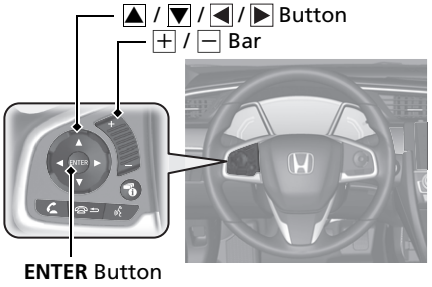
Models with color audio system



- + / − Button
  Press to adjust the volume up/down.
- **SOURCE** Button
  Press to change the audio mode: FM1/FM2/AM/USB or iPod/Pandora®/*Bluetooth*® Audio.

- ◀ / ▶ Button
  Radio: Press to change the preset station. Press and hold to select the next or previous strong station.
  iPod, USB device, or *Bluetooth*® Audio: Press to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.
  USB device or *Bluetooth*® Audio*: Press and hold to change a folder.
  Pandora®: Press to skip to the next track. Press and hold to select the next or previous station.

Models with Display Audio



- + / − Bar
  Press to adjust the volume up/down. Swipe down quickly to mute the volume or swipe up to cancel the mute.
- ▲ / ▼ Button
  Press ▲ or ▼ to cycle through the audio mode as follows:
  FM/AM/SiriusXM®*/USB/iPod/*Bluetooth*® Audio/Pandora®*/Apps*/Audio Apps*

- When listening to the radio and SiriusXM®*

1. Press **ENTER** to switch the display to a preset list you stored in the preset buttons.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a preset, then press **ENTER**.

* Not available on all models

• When listening to a USB flash drive

1. Press **ENTER** to display the folder list.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a folder.
3. Press **ENTER** to display a list of tracks in that folder.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a track, then press **ENTER**.

You can also swipe up or down to scroll through the list of tracks alphabetically.

• When listening to an iPod

1. Press **ENTER** to display the iPod music list.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a category.
3. Press **ENTER** to display a list of items in the category.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select an item, then press **ENTER**.

▶ Press **ENTER** and press ▲ or ▼ repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

You can also swipe up or down to scroll through the list of tracks alphabetically.

• When listening to Pandora®*

1. Press **ENTER** to display the station list.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select an item, then press **ENTER**.

• When listening to *Bluetooth*® Audio

1. Press **ENTER** to display the track list.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a track, then press **ENTER**.

● ◀ / ▶ Button

Radio: Press to change the preset station.
Press and hold to select the next or previous strong station.

USB device:
Press to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.
Press and hold to change a folder.

Pandora®*:
Press to skip to the next track.
Press and hold to select the next or previous station.

(Display/Information) Button:
Press to change contents.

➔ **Driver Information Interface*** P. 122

Audio system P. 232

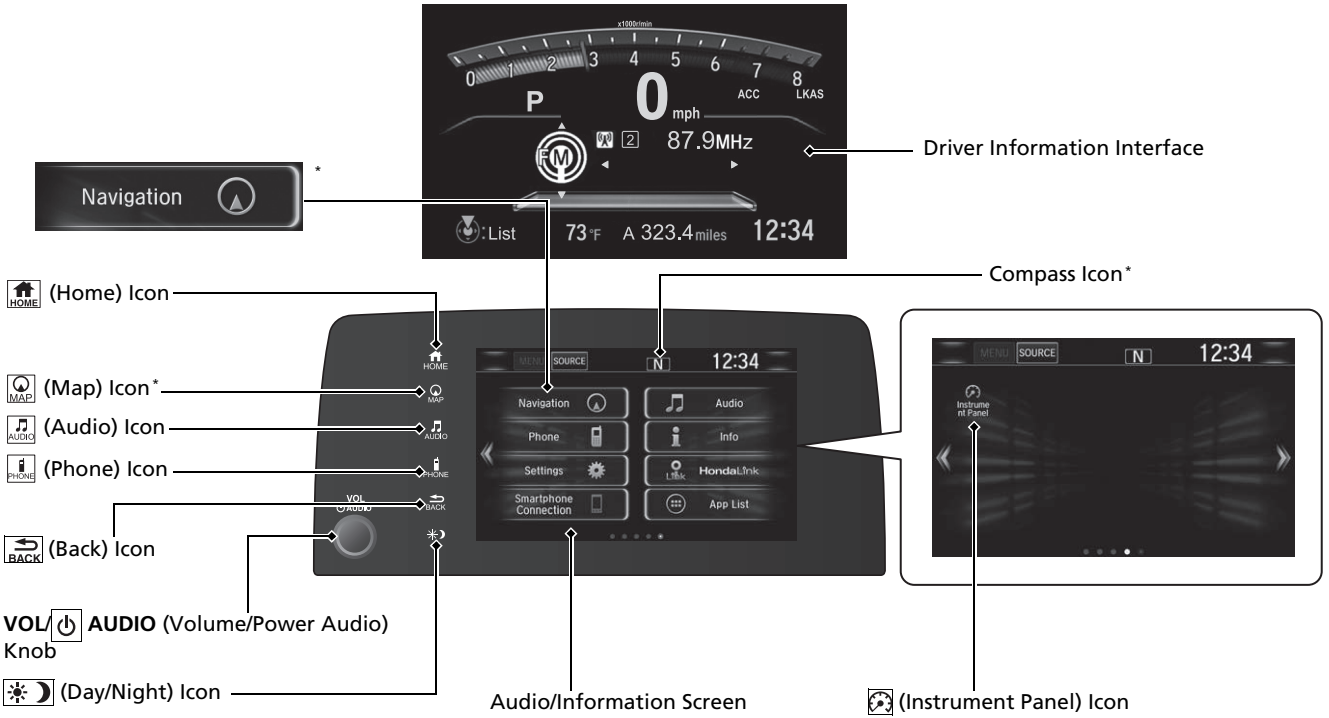
Models with color audio system P. 239



* Not available on all models

Models with Display Audio P. 260

For navigation system operation See the Navigation System Manual



Driving P. 447

Continuously Variable Transmission P. 469

● Shift to P and depress the brake pedal when starting the engine.

● **Shifting**

P **Park**
Turn off or start the engine.
Transmission is locked.

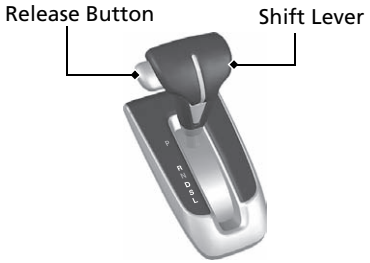
R **Reverse**
Used when reversing

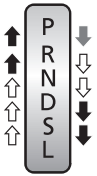
N **Neutral**
Transmission is not locked.

D **Drive**
Normal driving.

S **Drive (S)**
- Better acceleration
- Used to increase engine braking
- Used when going up or down hills

L **Low**
- Used to further increase engine braking
- Used when going up or down hills





Depress the brake pedal and press the release button to move out of P.

Press the release button to move the shift lever.

Move the shift lever without pressing the release button.

* Not available on all models

VSA® On and Off P. 510

- The vehicle stability assist (VSA®) system helps stabilize the vehicle during cornering, and helps maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA® comes on automatically every time you start the engine.
- To partially disable VSA functionality/ features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

Cruise Control* P. 472, 475

- Cruise control allows you to maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.
- To use cruise control, press the **CRUISE** button, then press **–/SET** once you have achieved the desired speed (above 25 mph or 40 km/h).

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) P. 518

- Detects a change in tire conditions and overall dimensions due to decrease in tire pressures.
- The TPMS is turned on automatically every time you start the engine.
- A calibration procedure must be performed when certain conditions arise.

CMBS™ On and Off

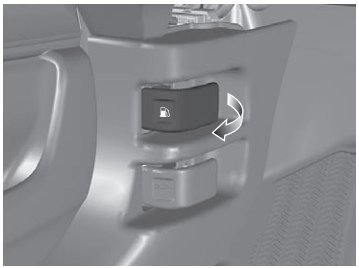
P. 536

- When a possible collision is likely unavoidable, the CMBS™ can help you to reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- The CMBS™ is turned on every time you start the engine.
- To turn the CMBS™ on or off, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

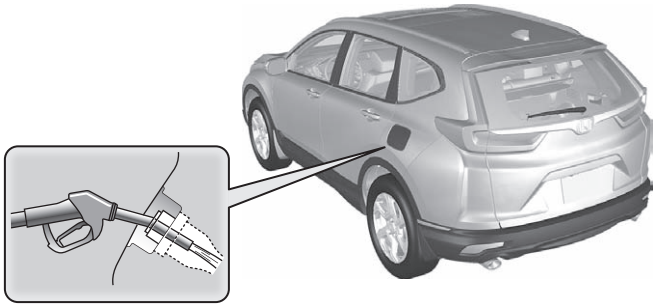
Refueling P. 549

Fuel recommendation: Unleaded gasoline, pump octane number 87 or higher
Fuel tank capacity:14 US gal (53 L)

1. Pull the fuel fill door release handle.

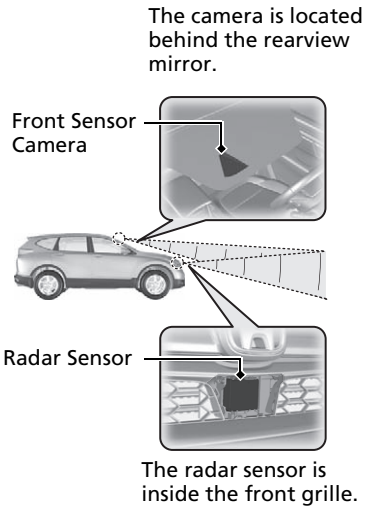


2. After refueling, wait for about five seconds before removing the filler nozzle.



Honda Sensing™*

Honda Sensing™ is a driver support system which employs the use of two distinctly different kinds of sensors, a radar sensor located in the front grille and a front sensor camera mounted to the interior side of the windshield, behind the rear view mirror.



Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) P. 481

Helps maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System

P. 497

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 501

Provides steering input to help keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) P. 532

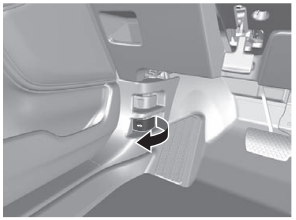
Can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle or a pedestrian detected in front of yours. The CMBS™ is designed to alert you when a potential collision is determined, as well as to reduce your vehicle speed to help minimize collision severity when a collision is deemed unavoidable.

Maintenance P. 555

Under the Hood P. 569

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and windshield washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake fluid.
- Check the battery condition monthly.

1. Pull the hood release handle under the corner of the dashboard.



2. Locate the hood latch lever, push it to the side, and then raise the hood. Once you have raised the hood slightly, you can release the lever.



3. When finished, close the hood and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

Wiper Blades P. 593

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windshield.



Tires P. 597

- Inspect tires and wheels regularly.
- Check tire pressures regularly.
- Install snow tires for winter driving.

Lights P. 586

- Inspect all lights regularly.

* Not available on all models

Handling the Unexpected P. 617

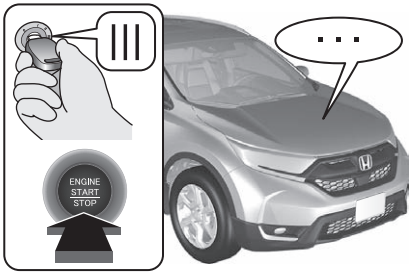
Flat Tire P. 619

- Park in a safe location and replace the flat tire with the compact spare tire in the cargo area.



Engine Won't Start P. 626

- If the battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



Overheating P. 633

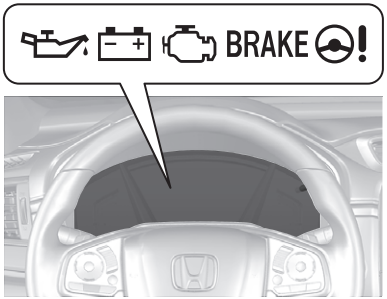
- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the hood, open the hood, and let the engine cool down.



Indicators Come On

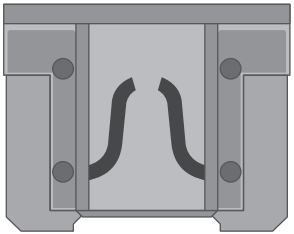
P. 637

- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



Blown Fuse P. 644

- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



Emergency Towing P. 648

- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.



What to Do If

Q U.S. models without smart entry system

The ignition switch does not turn from 0 to I. Why?

Canadian models

The power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to ACCESSORY. Why?

A

- The steering wheel may be locked.

U.S. models without smart entry system

- Try to turn the steering wheel left and right while turning the ignition key.



Canadian models

- Move the steering wheel left and right after pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Q Models without smart entry system

The ignition switch does not turn from I to 0 and I cannot remove the key. Why?

Models with smart entry system

The power mode does not change from ACCESSORY to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Why?

A The shift lever should be moved to P.



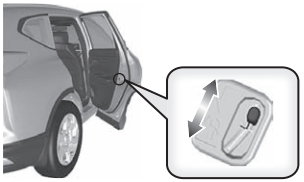
Q **Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?**

A This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

➔ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 530

Q **The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?**

A Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle. To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.



Q **Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?**

A If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

Q **Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?**

A The beeper sounds when:

- The exterior lights are left on.

Models without smart entry system

- The key is left in the ignition switch.

Models with smart entry system

- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.

Q **Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?**

A The beeper sounds when the driver and/or front passenger are not wearing their seat belts.

Q **Pressing the electric parking brake switch does not release the parking brake. Why?**

A Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.

Q **Depressing the accelerator pedal does not release the parking brake automatically. Why?**

A
- Fasten the driver's seat belt.
- Check if the transmission is in P or N. If so, select any other position.

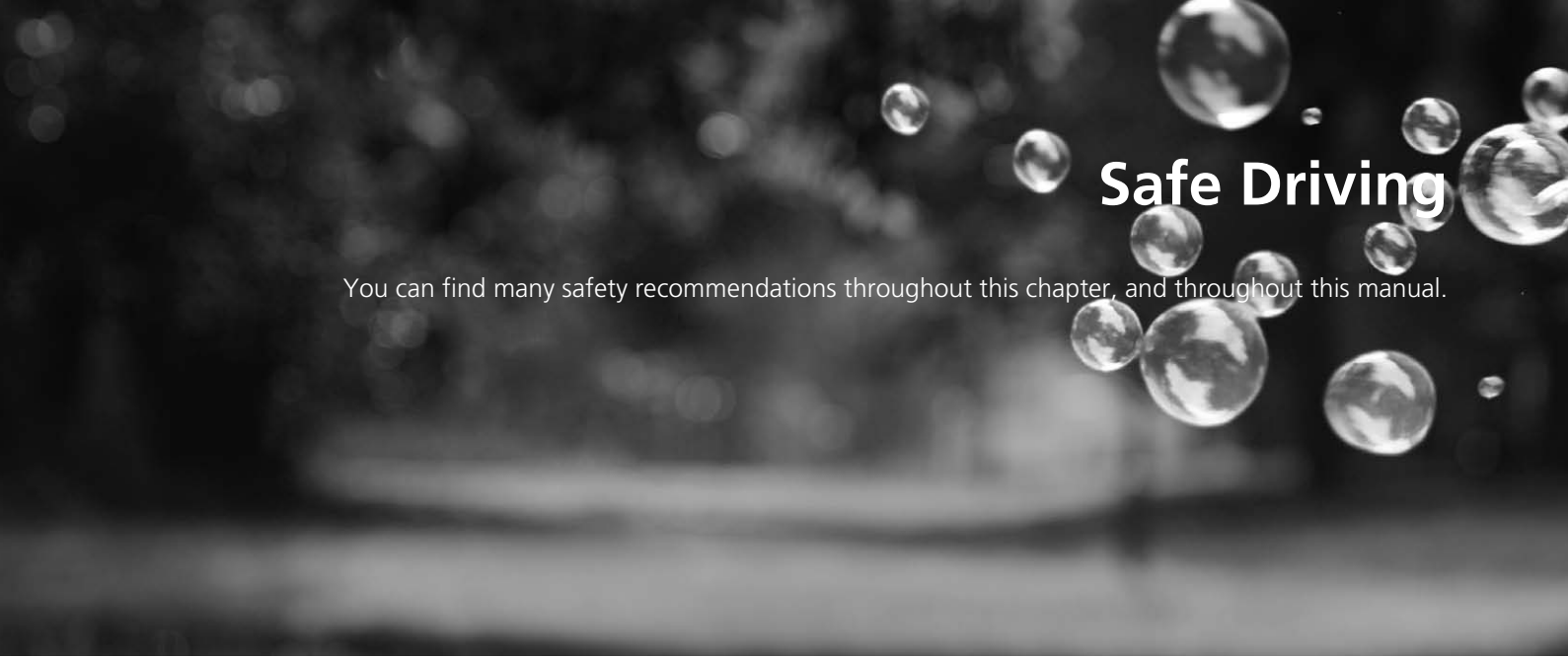
Q **Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?**

A The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Q **I'm seeing an amber indicator of a tire with an exclamation point. What is that?**

A The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) needs attention. If you recently inflated or changed a tire, you have to recalibrate the system.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) P. 518



Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

For Safe Driving
- Important Safety Precautions 34
- Important Handling Information 36
- Your Vehicle's Safety Features 37
- Safety Checklist 38

Seat Belts
- About Your Seat Belts 40
- Fastening a Seat Belt 44
- Seat Belt Inspection 48

Airbags
- Airbag System Components 49
- Types of Airbags 52
- Front Airbags (SRS) 52
- Side Airbags 56
- Side Curtain Airbags 58
- Airbag System Indicators 60
- Airbag Care 62

Child Safety
- Protecting Child Passengers 63
- Safety of Infants and Small Children 65
- Safety of Larger Children 74

Exhaust Gas Hazard
- Carbon Monoxide Gas 76

Safety Labels
- Label Locations 77

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

Important Safety Precautions

■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

■ Restrain all children

Children ages 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child seat. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

■ Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

Important Safety Precautions

Some states, provinces and territories prohibit the use of cell phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

■ **Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely**

Engaging in cell phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

■ **Control your speed**

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

■ **Keep your vehicle in safe condition**

Having a tire blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous.
To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tire pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

■ **Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle**

Children left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which the children and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in injury or death.
Even if the climate control system is on, never leave children in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

Important Handling Information

Your vehicle has higher ground clearance than a passenger vehicle designed for use only on pavement. Higher ground clearance has many advantages for off-highway driving. It allows you to travel over bumps, obstacles, and rough terrain. It also provides good visibility so you can anticipate problems earlier.

These advantages come at some cost. Because your vehicle is taller and rides higher off the ground, it has a higher center gravity making it more susceptible to tipping or roll over if you make abrupt turns. Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. As a reminder, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts.

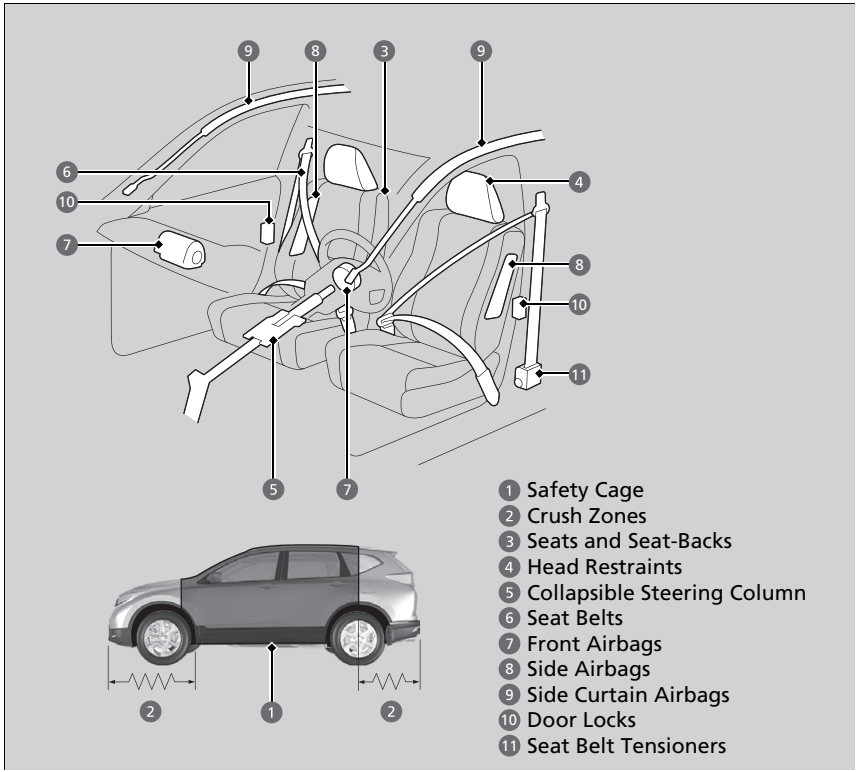
Important Handling Information

For information on how to reduce the risk of rollover, read:

Precautions While Driving P. 467
Off-Highway Driving Guidelines P. 458

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features



The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

Safety Checklist

For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

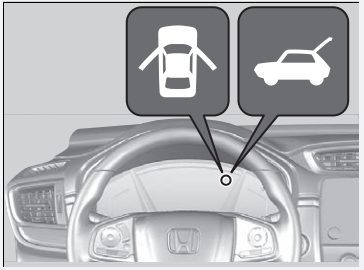
- After everyone has entered the vehicle, be sure all doors and the tailgate are closed and locked. Locking the doors and the tailgate helps prevent an occupant from being ejected and an outsider from unexpectedly opening a door or the tailgate.
  ➡ **Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside** P. 144
- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.
  ➡ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 197
- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the center of the head restraint aligns with the center of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.
  ➡ **Adjusting the Front Head Restraints** P. 203
- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.
  ➡ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 44
- Protect children by using seat belts or child seats according to a child's age, height and weight.
  ➡ **Child Safety** P. 63

Safety Checklist

Models with information display

If the door and/or the tailgate open indicator is on, a door and/or the tailgate is not completely closed. Close all doors and the tailgate tightly until the indicator goes off.

➡ **Door Open Indicator*** P. 87
➡ **Tailgate Open Indicator*** P. 87



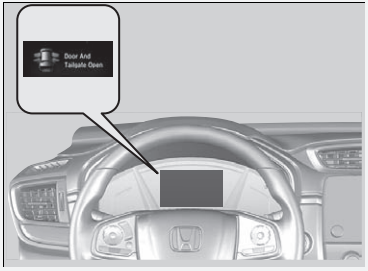
* Not available on all models

Safety Checklist

Models with driver information interface

If the door and/or tailgate open message appears on the driver information interface, a door and/or the tailgate is not completely closed. Close all doors and the tailgate tightly until the message disappears.

➡ **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages*** P. 104



* Not available on all models

About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help protect you in almost every type of crash, including:
- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All five seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop the retractor locks to restrain your body.
The front passenger's and rear seat belts also have a lockable retractor for use with child seats.

➡ **Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt** P. 71

⚠WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

Most states and all Canadian provinces and territories require you to wear seat belts.

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

About Your Seat Belts

If a rear seat passenger moves around and extends the seat belt, the lockable retractor may activate. If this happens, release the retractor by unfastening the seat belt and allow the belt to retract completely. Then refasten the belt.

Continued

■ Seat Belt Reminder



The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger or both to fasten their seat belts.
If the ignition switch is turned to ON II*1 and a seat belt is not fastened, a beeper will sound and the indicator will blink. After a few seconds, the beeper will stop and the indicator will come on and remain illuminated until the seat belt is fastened.

The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink while the vehicle is moving until the seat belt is fastened.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Seat Belt Reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the ignition switch is turned to ON II*1.

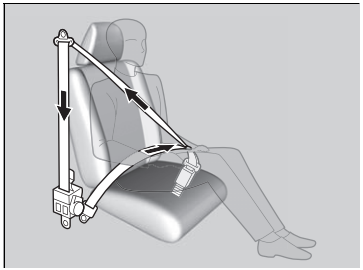
When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.
The indicator also may not come on and the beeper may not sound when the occupant is not heavy enough to trigger the weight sensor. Such occupants (e.g., infants and smaller children) should be moved to the rear seat as a deploying front airbag likely will injure or kill them.

➡ **Protecting Child Passengers** P. 63

Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The front seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.



Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

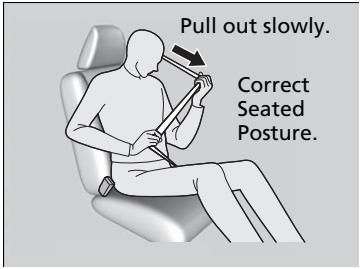
The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioner on that side of the vehicle also activates.

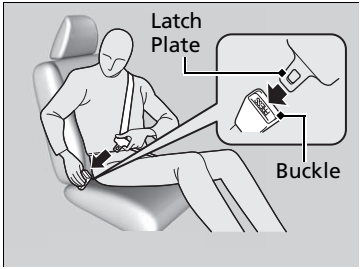
Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

Adjusting the Seats P. 197



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.



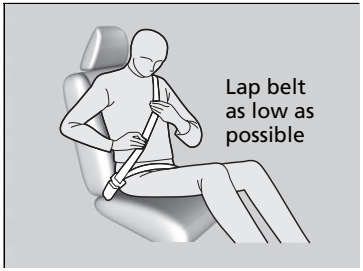
2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

▶ Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

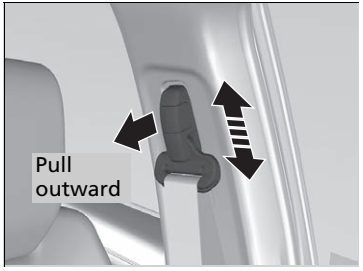
Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.



3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the center of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchors to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.



1. Move the anchor up and down while pulling the release outward.
2. Position the anchor so that the belt rests across the center of your chest and over your shoulder.

Fastening a Seat Belt

⚠WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.
When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

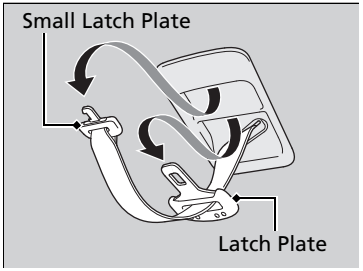
Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The shoulder anchor height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

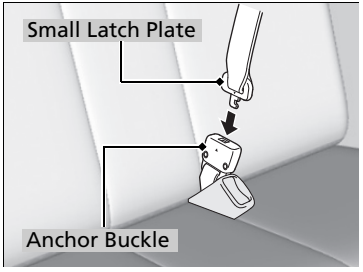
After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchor position is secure.

Continued

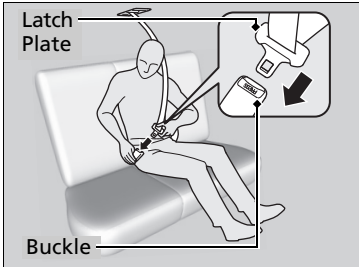
Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor



1. Pull out the seat belt's small latch plate and the latch plate from each holding slot in the ceiling.



2. Line up the triangle marks on the small latch plate and anchor buckle. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted. Attach the belt to the anchor buckle.



3. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Properly fasten the seat belt the same way you fasten the lap/shoulder seat belt.

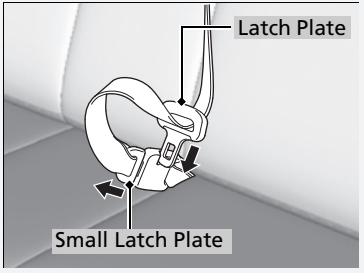
Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor

⚠WARNING

Using the seat belt with the detachable anchor unlatched increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash.

Before using the seat belt, make sure the detachable anchor is correctly latched.

To unlatch the detachable anchor, insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle.



Advice for Pregnant Women

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt and keep the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

Wear the shoulder belt across the chest avoiding the abdomen.



Wear the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
  ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.
A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

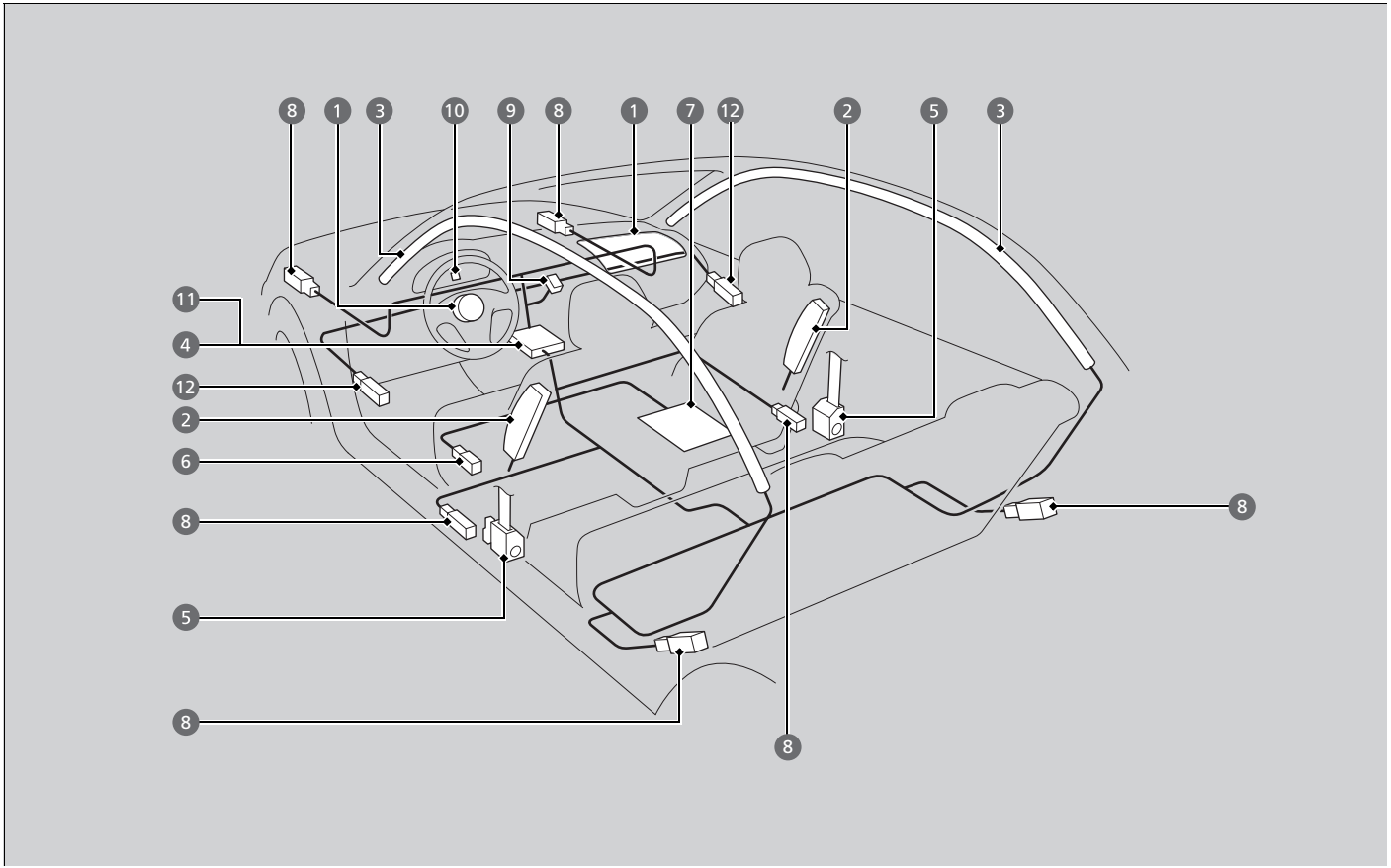
Seat Belt Inspection

⚠WARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

Airbag System Components



Continued

The front, front side, and side curtain airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. Both side curtain airbags are deployed in a rollover. The airbag system includes:

❶ Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the center of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

❷ Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for a front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

❸ Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.

❹ An electronic control unit that, when the vehicle is on, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, rollover sensor, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event the unit can record such information.

❺ Automatic front seat belt tensioners. In addition, the driver's and front passenger's seat belt buckles incorporate sensors that detect whether or not the belts are fastened.

❻ A driver's seat position sensor. This sensor determines the optimal force at which the airbag will deploy in a crash.

❼ Weight sensors in the front passenger's seat. The front passenger's airbag will be turned off if the weight on the seat is approximately 65 lbs (29 kg) or less (the weight of an infant or small child).

❽ Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.

❾ An indicator on the dashboard that alerts you that the front passenger's front airbag has been turned off.

❿ An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.

⓫ A rollover sensor that can detect if your vehicle is about to roll over and signal the control unit to deploy both side curtain airbags.

⓬ Pressure sensors inside each front door that control side airbag deployment.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag. Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers. Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:

- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

■ Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the center of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the ignition switch is in ON II*1.

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Front Airbags (SRS)

During a frontal crash severe enough to cause one or both front airbags to deploy, the airbags can inflate at different rates, depending on the severity of the crash, whether or not the seat belts are latched, and/or other factors. Frontal airbags are designed to supplement the seat belts to help reduce the likelihood of head and chest injuries in frontal crashes.

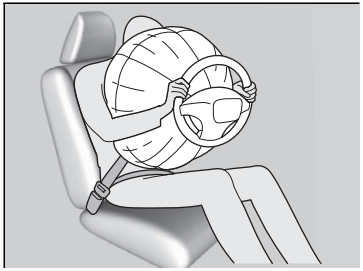
*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.

The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

Continued

How the Front Airbags Work

Although the driver's and front passenger's airbags normally inflate within a split second of each other, it is possible for only one airbag to deploy. This can happen if the severity of a collision is at the margin, or threshold that determines whether or not the airbags will deploy. In such cases, the seat belt will provide sufficient protection, and the supplemental protection offered by the airbag would be minimal.

■ **When front airbags should not deploy**

Minor frontal crashes: Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

Side impacts: Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move toward the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags have been specifically designed to help reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move toward the side of the vehicle.

Rear impacts: Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

Rollovers: In a rollover, your best form of protection is a seatbelt or, if your vehicle is equipped with a rollover sensor, both a seatbelt and a side curtain airbag. Front airbags, however, are not designed to deploy in a rollover as they would provide little if any protection.

■ **When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage**

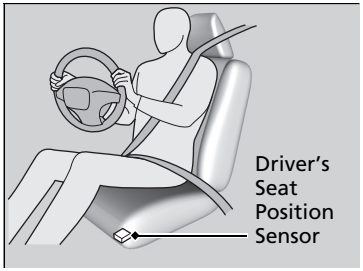
Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

■ **When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe**

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

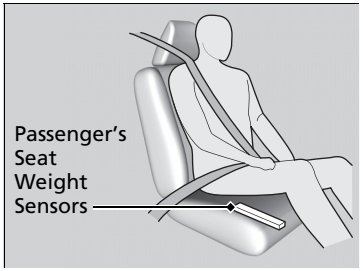
Advanced Airbags

The airbags have advanced features to help reduce the likelihood of airbag related injuries to smaller occupants.



The driver's advanced airbag system includes a seat position sensor.

Based on information from this sensor and the severity of the impact, the advanced airbag system determines the optimal deployment of the driver's airbag.



The front passenger's advanced airbag system has weight sensors.

We advise against allowing a child age 12 or under to ride in the front passenger's seat. However, ***if you do allow a child age 12 or under to ride in the front passenger's seat,*** note that the system will automatically turn off the front passenger's airbag if the sensors detect that the child is approximately 65 lbs (29kg) or less.

Advanced Airbags

If there is a problem with the driver's seat position sensor, the SRS indicator will come on, and in the event of a crash, the airbag will deploy (regardless of the driver's seating position) with a force corresponding to the severity of the impact.

For the advanced airbags to work properly:

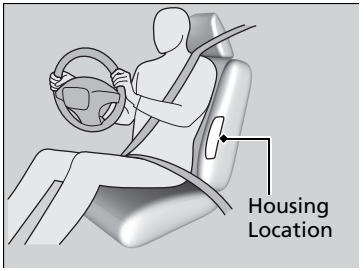
- Do not spill any liquid on or under the seats.
- Do not put any object under the passenger's seat.
- Make sure any objects are positioned properly on the floor. Improperly positioned objects can interfere with the advanced airbag sensors.
- All occupants should sit upright and wear their seat belts properly.
- Do not cover the passenger's side dashboard with a cloth, towel, cover, etc.

➡ **Passenger Airbag Off Indicator** P. 61

Side Airbags

The side airbags help protect the torso and pelvis of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

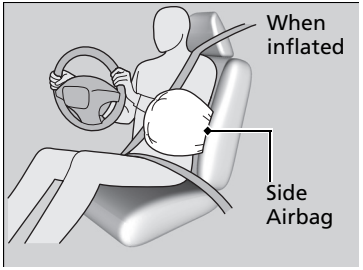
Housing Locations



The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.

Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

Side Airbags

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

If the impact is on the passenger's side, the airbag may not deploy when there is no passenger in the front passenger seat.

Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer.
Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

Side airbag deployment is controlled by a pressure sensor inside each front door. Damage or changes to the inside or outside of the doors may negatively affect side airbag deployment.
Contact an authorized dealer before changing or repairing a front door.

■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

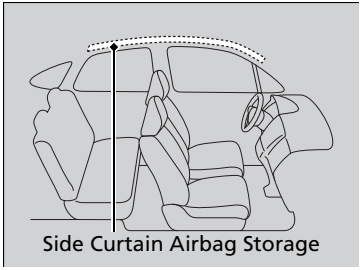
■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag to not deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was toward the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags help protect the heads of the driver and passengers in the outer seating positions during a moderate-to-severe side impact. The side curtain airbags equipped in this vehicle are also designed to help reduce the likelihood of partial and complete ejection of vehicle occupants through side windows in crashes, particularly rollover crashes.

■ Housing Locations


Side Curtain Airbag Storage

The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

Side Curtain Airbags

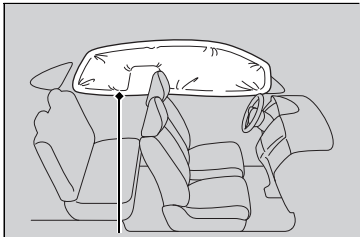
If the SRS control unit senses that your vehicle is about to rollover, it immediately deploys both side curtain airbags and activates both front seat belt tensioners.

If the impact is on the passenger's side, the passenger's side curtain airbag deploys even if there are no occupants on that side of the vehicle.

To get the best protection from the side curtain airbags, occupants should wear their seat belts properly and sit upright and well back in their seats.

Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

■ Operation


Deployed Side Curtain Airbag

The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a rollover or a moderate-to-severe side impact.

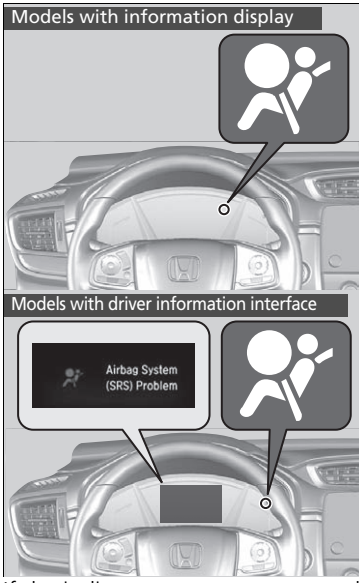
■ When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface*.

■ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator



■ When the ignition switch is turned to ON II*1

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

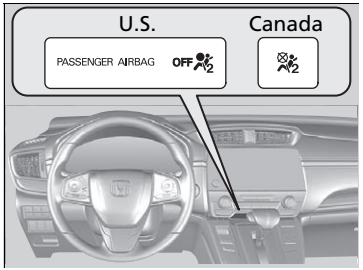
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

⚠WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

■ Passenger Airbag Off Indicator



■ When the passenger airbag off indicator comes on

The indicator comes on to alert you that the passenger's front airbag has been turned off. This occurs when the weight sensors detect about 65 lbs (29 kg) or less, the weight of an infant or small child, on the seat.

Children age 12 or under should always ride properly restrained in a back seat.
➡ **Child Safety** P. 63

If the front passenger seat is empty, the passenger's front airbag will not deploy and the indicator will come on.

Passenger Airbag Off Indicator

To ensure the passenger is detected properly, confirm that:
- There is no child seat or other object pressing against the rear of the seat-back.
- There is no rear passenger pushing or pulling on the back of the front passenger's seat.
- The front seat or seat-back is not forced back against an object on the seat or floor behind it.
- There is no object placed under or beside the front passenger's seat.
- The occupant is sitting in an upright position and the seat back is not excessively reclined.
- The occupant is not leaning against the door or center console.
- The occupant's feet are placed on the floor in front of them.
- There are no objects hanging from the front passenger's seat.
- Only small, lightweight objects are in the seat-back pocket.

The passenger airbag off indicator may come on and go off periodically if the total weight on the seat is near the airbag cutoff threshold.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if:
- All of the above conditions are met, and the indicator comes on with an adult seated in the front passenger seat.
- The seat is empty and the indicator is off.

Do not allow an adult passenger to ride in the front seat when the indicator is on.

Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: the driver's seat position sensor, weight sensors in the passenger's seat, front seat belt tensioners, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

■ Do not remove or modify a front seat without consulting a dealer

This would likely disable or affect the proper operation of the driver's seat position sensor or the weight sensors in the passenger's seat. If it is necessary to remove or modify a front seat to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact a Honda dealer, or for U.S. vehicles, American Honda Automobile Customer Service at 1-800-999-1009 and for Canadian vehicles, Honda Canada Customer Relations at 1-888-9-HONDA-9.

Airbag Care

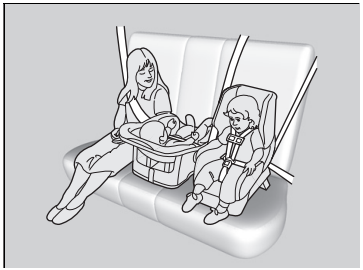
We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children ages 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, every state, Canadian province and territory requires that infants and children be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat. This is because:



- An inflating front or side airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

Protecting Child Passengers

⚠WARNING

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in a child seat. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that all children ages 12 and under be properly restrained in a rear seat. Some states or provinces/territories have laws restricting where children may ride.

Continued

- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt correctly must be restrained in an approved child seat that is properly secured to the vehicle using either the seat belt or the lower anchors of the LATCH system.
- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

Protecting Child Passengers

⚠WARNING

Allowing a child to play with a seat belt or wrap one around their neck can result in serious injury or death.

Instruct children not to play with any seat belt and make sure any unused seat belt a child can reach is buckled, fully retracted, and locked.

To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.

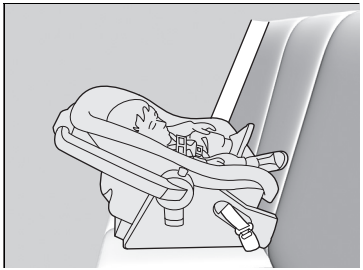
To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazards and child safety, your vehicle warning came with a label on the dashboard (U.S. models) and has labels on the front visors. Please read and follow the instructions on these labels.

Safety Labels P. 77

Safety of Infants and Small Children

■ Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing, reclining child seat until the infant reaches the seat manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat, and the infant is at least one year old.



■ Positioning a rear-facing child seat

Child seats must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child seat may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position. Make sure that there is no contact between the child seat and the seat in front of it.

It can also interfere with proper operation of the passenger's advanced front airbag system.

➡ **Airbags** P. 49

If this occurs, we recommend that you install the child seat directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied. Or, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child seat.

Protecting Infants

⚠WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death during a crash.

Always place a rear-facing child seat in the rear seat, not the front.

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing seat for a child up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing seat.

Rear-facing child seats should never be installed in a forward facing position.

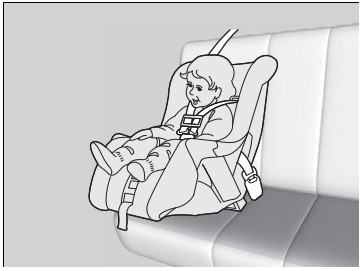
Always refer to the child seat manufacturer's instructions before installation.

Do not allow a front seat to rest against a child seat installed in a rear seating position:
The weight sensor in the front seat may not correctly detect the actual weight of the occupant.

Continued

■ Protecting Smaller Children

If a child is at least one year old and within the weight range indicated by the child seat manufacturer, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured forward-facing child seat.



■ Forward-facing child seat placement

We strongly recommend placing a forward-facing child seat in a rear seating position.

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat can be hazardous, even with advanced front airbags that automatically turn the passenger's front airbag off. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

Protecting Smaller Children

⚠WARNING

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a forward-facing child seat in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child seat use where you are driving, and follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing seat for a child up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing seat.

Selecting a Child Seat

Most child seats are LATCH-compatible (Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children). Some have a rigid-type connector while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child seats can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child seat manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximizing your child's safety.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with LATCH, a LATCH-compatible child seat can be installed using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child seats are required to be designed so that they can be secured with a lap belt or the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt. In addition, the child seat manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach a LATCH-compatible seat once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child seat owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

Important consideration when selecting a child seat

Make sure the child seat meets the following three requirements:

- The child seat is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child seat is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child seat is compliant with Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213 or Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213.

Selecting a Child Seat

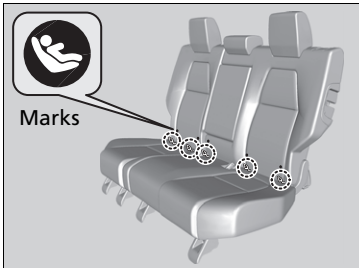
Installation of a LATCH-compatible child seat is simple.

LATCH-compatible child seats have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

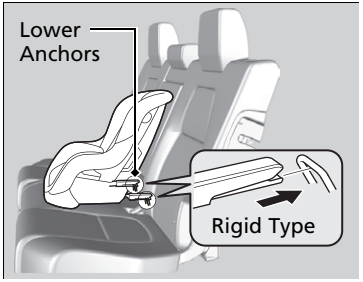
Continued

■ Installing a LATCH-Compatible Child Seat

A LATCH-compatible child seat can be installed in rear seats. A child seat is attached to the lower anchors with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors.

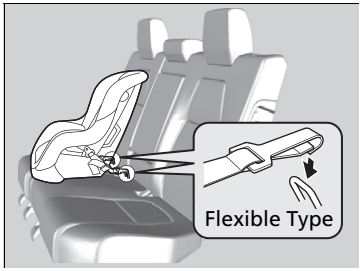


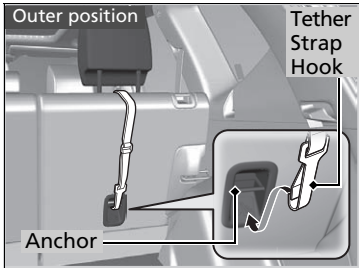
1. Locate the lower anchors under the marks.

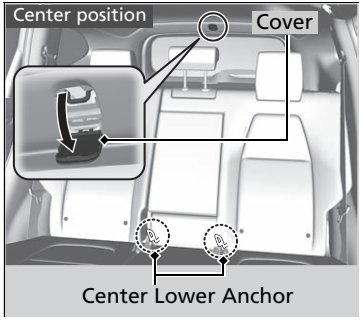


2. Place the child seat on the vehicle seat, then attach the child seat to the lower anchors according to the instructions that came with the child seat.

▶ When installing the child seat, make sure that the lower anchors are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.







Outer position

3. Put the head restraint to its upper-most position, then route the tether strap between the head restraint legs, and secure the tether strap hook to the anchor.

4. Go to step 7.

Center position

3. Put the head restraint to its upper-most position.

4. Open the anchor cover.

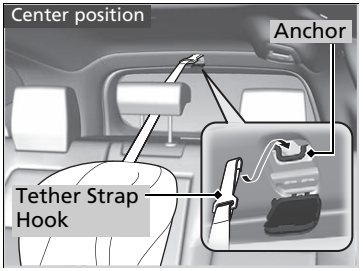
Installing a LATCH-Compatible Child Seat

⚠WARNING

Never attach two child seats to the same anchor. In a collision, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child seat attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

For your child's safety, when using a child seat installed using the LATCH system, make sure that the child seat is properly secured to the vehicle. A child seat that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

Continued



5. Route the tether strap through the head restraint legs. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
6. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchor.

All models

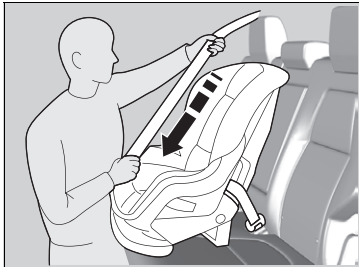
7. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child seat manufacturer.
8. Make sure the child seat is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; little movement should be felt.
9. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.

Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child seat can be installed with a lap/shoulder belt in any rear seat or, if absolutely necessary, the front passenger seat.



1. Place the child seat on the vehicle seat.
2. Route the seat belt through the child seat according to the seat manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
   ▶ Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.



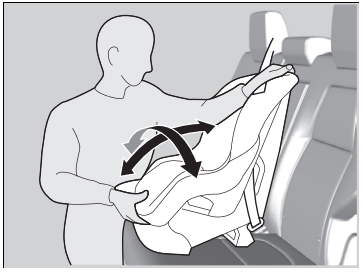
3. Slowly pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out until it stops. This activates the lockable retractor.
4. Let the seat belt if it is completely retracted it unlocks wind up into the retractor, then try to pull it out to make sure the retractor is locked.
   ▶ If you are able to pull the shoulder belt out, the lockable retractor is not activated. Pull the seat belt all the way out, and repeat steps 3 – 4.

Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child seat that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

Continued





5. Grab the shoulder part of the seat belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
▶ When doing this, place your weight on the child seat and push it into the vehicle seat.

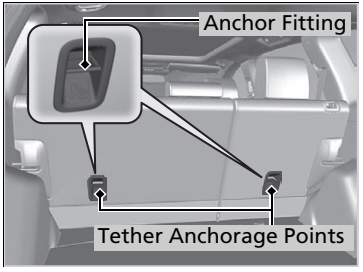
6. Make sure the child seat is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; less than one inch of movement should occur near the seat belt.

7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.

Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.

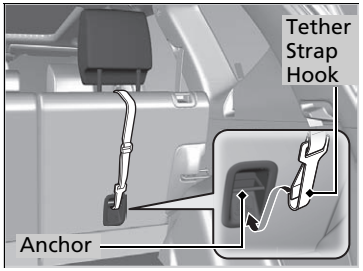
Adding Security with a Tether



Two tether anchorage points are provided behind the rear outer seating positions and one in the ceiling for the rear center.
If you have a child seat that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.

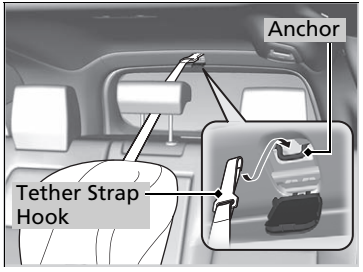
Adding Security with a Tether

Since a tether can provide additional security to the lap/shoulder seat belt installation, we recommend using a tether whenever one is available.



■ Using an outer anchor

1. Put the head restraint to its upper-most position, then route the tether strap through the head restraint legs.
   Make sure the strap is not twisted.
2. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchor.
3. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child seat manufacturer.



■ Using the center anchor

1. Put the head restraint to its upper-most position.
2. Open the anchor cover.
3. Route the tether strap through the head restraint legs.
   Make sure the strap is not twisted.
4. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchor.
5. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child seat manufacturer.

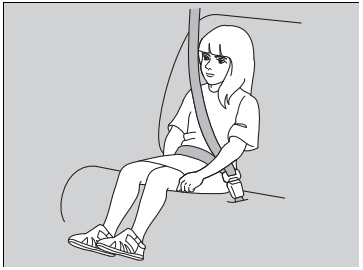
Safety of Larger Children

■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child seat, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

Safety of Larger Children

⚠WARNING

Allowing a child age 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed.

Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.

Protecting Larger Children-Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

■ Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.

Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.
There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

Some U.S. states, and Canadian provinces and territories require children to use a booster seat until they reach a given age or weight (e.g. six years or 60 lbs). Be sure to check current laws in the state or province, or territory where you intend to drive.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colorless, odorless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

■ **Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever**
- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the tailgate open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the tailgate open, open all the windows and set the climate control system as shown below.

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the climate control system in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

⚠WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic.

Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

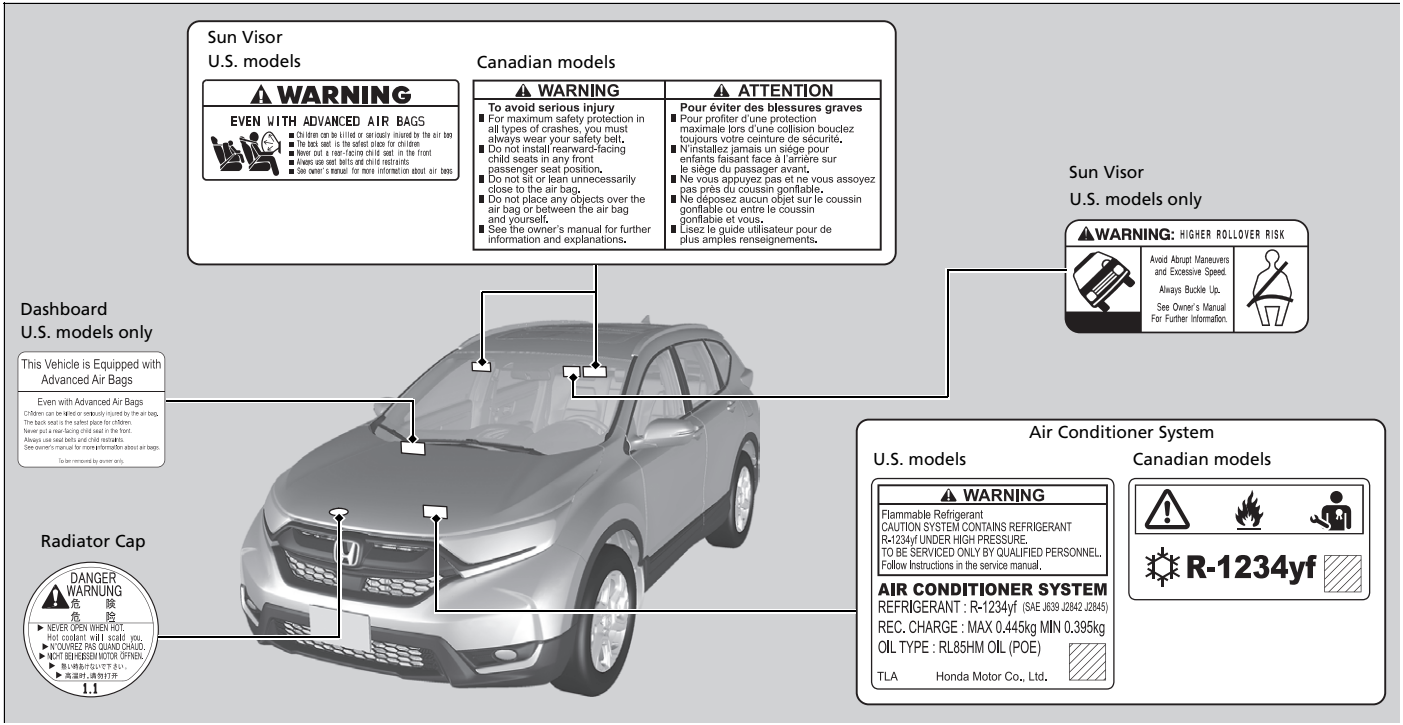
Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas.
Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read (except for the U.S. dashboard label which may be removed by the owner), contact a dealer for a replacement.

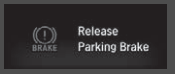
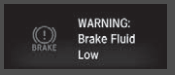
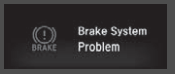


Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.

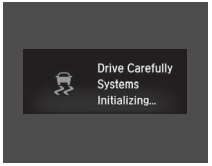
Indicators
Information Display Warning and Information Messages* 103
Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages* 104
Gauges and Displays
Gauges 118
Information Display* 119
Driver Information Interface* 122

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
U.S. BRAKE Canada  (Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off if the parking brake has been released. • Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released. • Comes on when the brake fluid level is low. • Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system. • The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake not fully released. • Comes on for about 15 seconds when you pull the electric parking brake switch while the ignition switch is in LOCK 0*1. • Stays on for about 15 seconds when you turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0*1 while the electric parking brake is set.	• **Comes on while driving** - Make sure the parking brake is released. Check the brake fluid level. ➡ **What to do when the indicator comes on while driving** P. 639 • **Comes on along with the brake system indicator (amber)** - Immediately stop in a safe place. Contact a dealer for repair. The brake pedal becomes harder to operate. Depress the pedal further than you normally do. • **Comes on along with the ABS indicator** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks** P. 639 • **Blinks and the brake system indicator (amber) comes on at the same time** - There is a problem with the electric parking brake system. The parking brake may not be set. Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. ➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On** P. 640	  

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

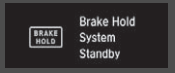
* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
U.S. BRAKE SYSTEM Canada (Amber)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system. • Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system or the automatic brake hold system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • **Comes on while driving** - Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.	
		• Comes on if there is a problem with the radar sensor. • Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.	• Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit. ➡ **Maximum Load Limit** P. 451	
		• Comes on if the parking brake and brake system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

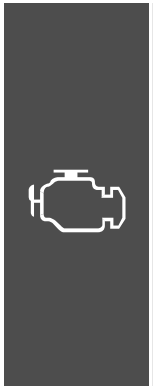
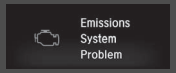
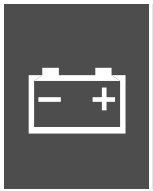
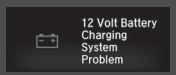
* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on when the automatic brake hold system is on.	➔ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 528	
	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on when the automatic brake hold is activated.	➔ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 528	—

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Low Oil Pressure Indicator	• Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON (II)*1, and goes off when the engine starts. • Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.	• **Comes on while driving** - Immediately stop in a safe place. ➡ **If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On** P. 637	
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	• Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON (II)*1, and goes off when the engine starts, or after several seconds if the engine did not start. If "readiness codes" have not been set, it blinks five times before it goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control system. • Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected.	• Readiness codes are part of the on board diagnostics for the emissions control systems. ➡ **Testing of Readiness Codes** P. 658 • **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • **Blinks while driving** - Stop in a safe place where there are no flammable objects. Stop the engine for 10 minutes or more, and wait for it to cool down. Then, take your vehicle to a dealer. ➡ **If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks** P. 638	
	Charging System Indicator	• Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON (II)*1, and goes off when the engine starts. • Comes on when the battery is not charging.	• **Comes on while driving** - Turn off the climate control system and rear defogger in order to reduce electricity consumption. ➡ **If the Charging System Indicator Comes On** P. 637	

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

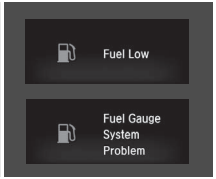
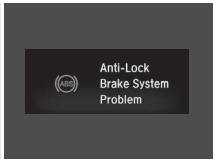
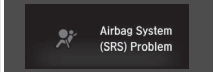
* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Shift Lever Position Indicator	• Indicates the current shift lever position.	➡ **Shifting** P. 469	
	Transmission Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Blinks if the transmission system has a problem.	• **Blinks while driving** - Avoid sudden starts and acceleration and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.	
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	• Comes on and the beeper sounds if you are not wearing a seat belt when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1. • If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later. • Blinks while driving if either you or the front passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals.	• The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the front passenger fasten their seat belts. • **Stays on after you or the front passenger has fastened the seat belt** - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 42	

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

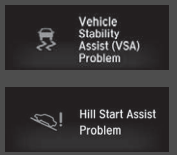
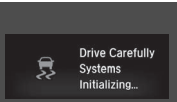
* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Low Fuel Indicator	• Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 2.1 U.S. gal/8.0 liter left). • Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge.	• **Comes on** - Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible. • **Blinks** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	
	Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem with the ABS.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function. **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 530	
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected: - Supplemental restraint system - Side airbag system - Side curtain airbag system - Seat belt tensioner	• **Stays on constantly or does not come on at all** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

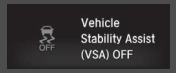
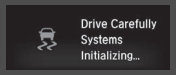
* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) System Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Blinks when VSA® is active. • Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA® system or hill start assist system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System** P. 509	
		• Comes on if the VSA® system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

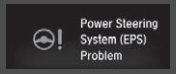
* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) **OFF** Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on when you partially disable VSA®.	**VSA® On and Off** P. 510	
		• Comes on if the VSA® system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	
	Door Open Indicator*	• Comes on for a few seconds if you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on if any door is not completely closed. • The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if any door is opened while driving.	• Goes off when all doors are closed.	—
	Tailgate Open Indicator*	• Comes on for a few seconds if you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on if the tailgate is not completely closed. • The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if tailgate is opened while driving.	• Goes off when the tailgate is closed.	—

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

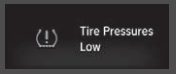
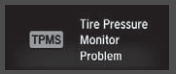
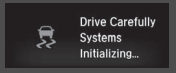
* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	• Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, and goes off when the engine starts. • Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system.	• **Stays on constantly or does not come on at all** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On** P. 641	

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • May come on briefly if the ignition switch is turned to ON II*1 and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the calibration process is not yet complete. • Comes on and stays on when: - One or more tires' pressures are determined to be significantly low. - The system has not been calibrated.	• **Comes on while driving** - Stop in a safe place, check tire pressures, and inflate the tire(s) if necessary. • **Stays on after the tires are inflated to the recommended pressures** - The system needs to be calibrated. ➡ **TPMS Calibration** P. 518	
		• Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the TPMS, or when a compact spare tire is temporarily installed.	• **Blinks and remains on** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If the vehicle is fitted with a compact spare, get your regular tire repaired or replaced, and put back on your vehicle as soon as you can.	
		• Comes on if the TPMS is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

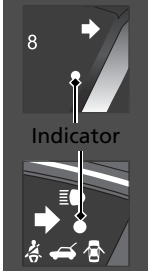
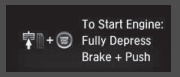
* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	System Message Indicator*	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the driver information interface appears at the same time.	• While the indicator is on, press the (display/information) button to see the message again. • Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the driver information interface. Take the appropriate action for the message. • The driver information interface does not return to the normal screen unless the warning is canceled, or the button is pressed.	—
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	• Blink when you operate the turn signal lever. • Blinks along with all turn signals when you press the hazard warning button.	• **Does not blink or blinks rapidly** **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 590	—
	High Beam Indicator	• Comes on when the high beam headlights are on.	—	—
	Auto High-beam System Indicator*	• Comes on when all the operating conditions of the Auto high-beam system are met.	**Auto High-Beam System*** P. 181	—
	Lights On Indicator	• Comes on whenever the light switch is on, or in **AUTO*** when the exterior lights are on.	• If you remove the key from the ignition switch*1 while the exterior lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.	—

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

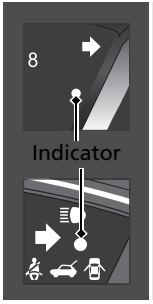
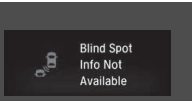
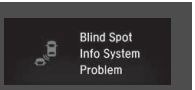
* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Fog Light Indicator*	• Comes on when the fog lights are on.	—	—
	Immobilizer System Indicator	• Blinks if the immobilizer system cannot recognize the key information.	• **Blinks** - You cannot start the engine. Depress the brake pedal, then turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0*1. Pull the key out*2, and then insert the key and turn it to ON II*1 again. • **Repeatedly blinks** - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur.	Models without smart entry system   Models with smart entry system  

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.
*2:Canadian models only: Apply and hold the brake pedal before turning the ignition on.

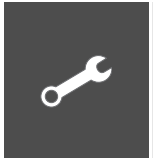
* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Security System Alarm Indicator	• Blinks when the security system alarm has been set.	**Security System Alarm*** P. 161	—
	Blind spot information (BSI) Indicator*	• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Stays on while BSI is turned off.	—	
		• Comes on when mud, snow, or ice accumulates in the vicinity of sensor.	• **Comes on while driving** - Remove the obstacle in the vicinity of sensor. **Blind spot information (BSI) System*** P. 512	
		• Comes on if there is a problem with the system.	• **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.
*2:Canadian models only: Apply and hold the brake pedal before turning the ignition on.

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	ECON Mode Indicator	• Comes on when you press the **ECON** button.	➡ **ECON Button** P. 471	
	**CRUISE MAIN** Indicator*	• Comes on when you press the **CRUISE** button.	➡ **Cruise Control*** P. 475	—
	**CRUISE CONTROL** Indicator*	• Comes on if you have set a speed for cruise control.	➡ **Cruise Control*** P. 475	—
	Maintenance Minder Indicator*	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on when the scheduled maintenance is due soon.	➡ **Maintenance Minder™** P. 559	—
	Transmission Temperature Indicator*	• Comes on when the transmission fluid temperature is too high.	• Stop in a safe place and move the shift position to P.	—
	Power Reduced Indicator*	• Comes on if there is a problem with the shutter grill, and the radiator coolant temperature is too high.	• Power output will be reduced, so you may not be able to accelerate or maintain your current speed. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	—

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

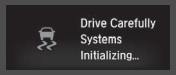
* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Brake Depressing Indicator*	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. Electric Parking Brake System • Blinks when the electric parking brake switch is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the electric parking brake is in operation.	• **Blinks while driving** - Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed. ➡ **Parking Brake** P. 524	—
		Automatic Brake Hold System • Blinks when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the automatic brake hold is in operation. • Blinks if the automatic brake hold is automatically canceled while it is in operation. The beeper sounds.	• **Blinks while driving** - Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed. ➡ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 528 • Immediately depress the brake pedal.	—
STARTER SYSTEM	Starter System Indicator*	• Comes on if the starter system has a problem.	• As a temporary measure, press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for up to 15 seconds while pressing the brake pedal and manually start the engine. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	—

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

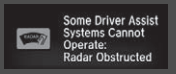
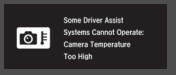
* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
AWD	All-wheel drive (**AWD**) Indicator*	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with the AWD system. • Blinks when the differential temperature is too high.	• **Stays on constantly** - The engine drives the front wheels only in this state. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	—
			• **Blinks while driving** - Stop in a safe place, change to P, and idle the engine until the indicator goes off. If the indicator does not stop blinking, take your vehicle to a dealer. ➡ **Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System™*** P. 517	—
	Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Indicator*	• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with the RDM system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.	• Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit. ➡ **Maximum Load Limit** P. 451	
		• Comes on if the RDM is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	

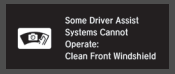
*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Continued

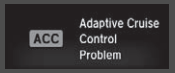
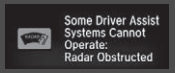
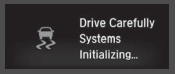
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Indicator*	• Comes on when the RDM system shuts itself off.	- Indicator may come on temporarily when passing through an enclosed space, such as tunnel. - The area around the radar sensor is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you cleaned the radar sensor. ➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*** P. 532	
		• Comes on when the RDM system shuts itself off.	• **Stays on** - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down. ➡ **Front Sensor Camera*** P. 479	

* Not available on all models

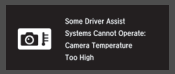
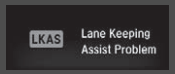
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Indicator*	• Comes on when the RDM system shuts itself off.	• **Stays on** - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message come back on after you cleaned the area around the camera. ➡ **Front Sensor Camera*** P. 479	

* Not available on all models

Continued

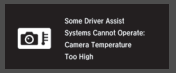
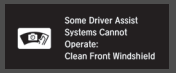
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control (**ACC**) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) Indicator (Amber)*	• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with ACC with LSF.	• **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded. • ACC with LSF has been automatically canceled.	• Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit. ➡ **Maximum Load Limit** P. 451 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	
		• Comes on if anything covers the radar sensor cover and prevents the sensor from detecting a vehicle in front. • May come on when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.) • ACC with LSF has been automatically canceled.	• When the radar sensor gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe off dirt using a soft cloth. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you clean the sensor cover.	
		• Comes on if the ACC with LSF is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	

* Not available on all models

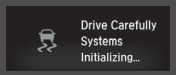
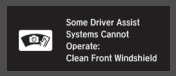
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Adaptive Cruise Control (**ACC**) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) Indicator (Green)*	• Comes on when you press the **MAIN** button.	➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 481	—
ACC		• Comes on when ACC with LSF is in operation, but the temperature inside the front sensor camera is too high. ACC with LSF cancels automatically. The beeper sounds simultaneously.	• Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. • **Goes off** - The camera has been cooled down. Pressing the **MAIN** button can resume the system. ➔ **Front Sensor Camera*** P. 479 ➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 481	
LKAS	Lane Keeping Assist System (**LKAS**) Indicator (Amber)*	• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	

* Not available on all models

Continued

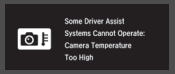
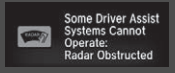
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
LKAS	Lane Keeping Assist System (**LKAS**) Indicator (Green)*	• Comes on when you press the **MAIN** button.	**Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)*** P. 501	—
		• Comes on when the LKAS is in operation, or the LKAS button is pressed, but the temperature inside the front sensor camera is too high. The LKAS cancels automatically. The beeper sounds simultaneously.	• Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. • **Goes off** - The camera has cooled down and the system is working normally. **Front Sensor Camera*** P. 479	
		• Comes on when the area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. • May come on when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.)	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message come back on after you cleaned the area around the camera.	

 * Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) Indicator*	• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Comes on when you deactivate the CMBS™. A driver information interface message appears for five seconds. • Comes on if there is a problem with the CMBS™.	• **Stays on constantly without the CMBS™ off** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*** P. 532	 
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.	• Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit. ➡ **Maximum Load Limit** P. 451	
		• Comes on if the CMBS™ is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	
		• Comes on when the CMBS™ system shuts itself off.	• **Stays on** - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. ➡ **Front Sensor Camera*** P. 479 • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you cleaned the camera. ➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*** P. 532	

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) Indicator*	• Comes on when the CMBS™ system shuts itself off.	• **Stays on** - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down. ➡ **Front Sensor Camera*** P. 479	
			• Indicator may come on temporarily when passing through an enclosed space, such as tunnel. - The area around the radar sensor is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you clean the sensor cover. ➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*** P. 532	

 * Not available on all models

Information Display Warning and Information Messages*

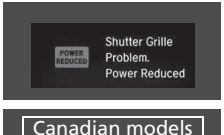
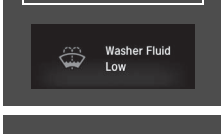
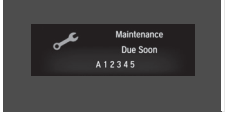
The following messages appear only on the information display.

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when there is a problem with the sensor on the battery.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

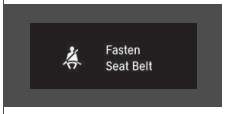
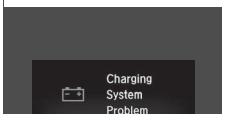
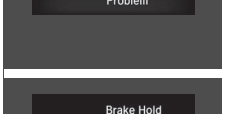
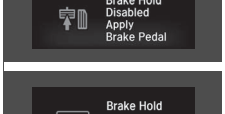
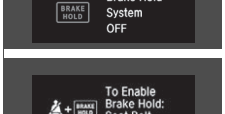
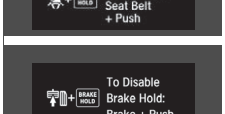
* Not available on all models

Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages*

The following messages appear only on the driver information interface. Press the (display/information) button to see the message again with the system message indicator on.

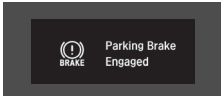
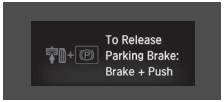
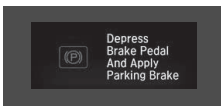
Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears if any door or the tailgate is not completely closed. • Appears if any door or the tailgate is opened while driving. The beeper sounds.	• Goes off when all doors and the tailgate are closed.
	• Appears if there is a problem with the shutter grill, and the radiator coolant temperature is too high.	• Power output will be reduced, so you may not be able to accelerate or maintain your current speed. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
Canadian models 	• Appears when the washer fluid gets low.	• Refill the washer fluid. ➡ **Refilling Window Washer Fluid** P. 585
	• Appears when the scheduled maintenance is due soon. • Consequently, **Maintenance Due Now** and **Maintenance Past Due** follow.	➡ **Maintenance Minder Messages on the Driver Information Interface** P. 565

 * Not available on all models

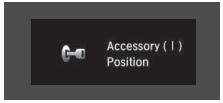
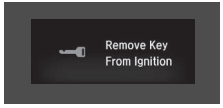
Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when the engine coolant temperature gets abnormally high.	➔ **Overheating** P. 633
	• Appears when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1 without fastening the driver's seat belt.	• Fasten the seat belt properly before you start to drive.
	• Appears when there is a problem with the sensor on the battery.	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➔ **Checking the Battery** P. 606
	• Appears along with the battery charging system indicator when the battery is not charging.	• Turn off the climate control system and rear defogger to reduce electricity consumption. ➔ **If the Charging System Indicator Comes On** P. 637
	• Appears if the automatic brake hold is automatically canceled while it is in operation.	• Immediately depress the brake pedal.
	• Appears when the automatic brake hold system is turned off.	➔ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 528
	• Appears when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without wearing the driver's seat belt.	• Fasten the driver's seat belt. ➔ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 528
	• Appears when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the automatic brake hold is in operation.	• Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed. ➔ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 528

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

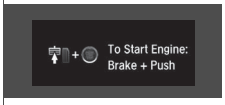
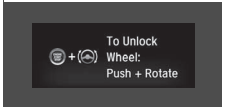
Continued

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when the parking brake is applied automatically while it is in operation.	➔ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 528 ➔ **Parking Brake** P. 524
	• Appears when the electric parking brake switch is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the electric parking brake is in operation.	• **Appears while driving** - Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed. ➔ **Parking Brake** P. 524
	• Appears if there is something wrong with the vehicle while you are driving.	• Immediately stop in a safe place. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	• Appears if the shift position cannot be changed to P due to a problem with the vehicle.	• Apply the parking brake once you have stopped. ➔ **Parking Brake** P. 524 • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

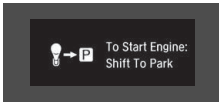
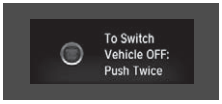
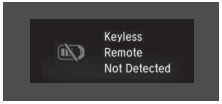
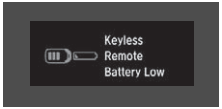
Models without smart entry system

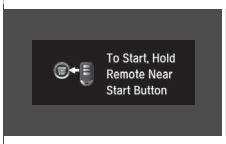
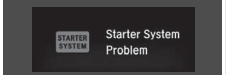
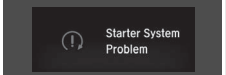
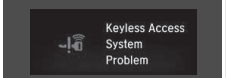
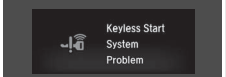
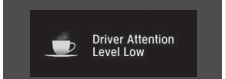
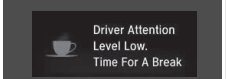
Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when you open the driver's door while the ignition key is in ACCESSORY I.	• Turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0, then remove the key.
	• Appears when the ignition key is turned to ACCESSORY I from ON II. (The driver's door is closed.)	—
	• Appears when you open the driver's door while the ignition key is in LOCK 0.	• Remove the key from the ignition switch.

Models with smart entry system

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears after you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON.	**Starting the Engine** P. 462
	• Appears when the steering wheel is locked.	• Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

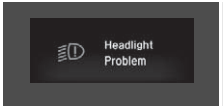
Continued

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears if you push the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to turn the engine off without the shift lever in P.	U.S. models • Move the shift lever to P. The power mode changes to VEHICLE OFF. Canadian models • Move the shift lever to P, then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice.
	• Appears if you push the **ENGINE START/STOP** button and the parking brake is not activated or the shift lever is in N position.	• Move the shift lever to P position and start the engine.
	• Appears when the power mode is in ACCESSORY.	—
	• Appears after the driver's door is opened when the power mode is in ACCESSORY.	• Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice with your foot off the brake pedal to change the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
	• Appears when you close the door with the power mode in ON without the smart entry remote inside the vehicle.	• Disappears when you bring the smart entry remote back inside the vehicle and close the door. ➡ **Smart Entry Remote Reminder** P. 174
	• Appears when the smart entry remote battery becomes weak.	• Replace the battery as soon as possible. ➡ **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 608

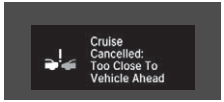
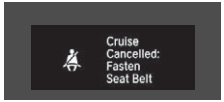
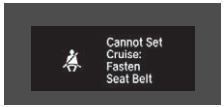
Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears if the smart entry remote battery is too weak to start the engine or the key is not within operating range to start the engine. A beeper sounds six times.	• Bring the smart entry remote in front of the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to be touched with. ➔ **If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak** P. 627
U.S.  Canada 	• Appears when the starter system has a problem.	• As a temporary measure, press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for up to 15 seconds while pressing the brake pedal and manually start the engine. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
 	• Appears as soon as a problem is detected in the smart entry system or push button starting system.	• **Appears constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
 	• Appears if the vehicle is being driven in a manner consistent with drowsy or inattentive driving.	➔ **Driver Attention Monitor** P. 126

Continued

Models with LED headlight

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears if there is a problem with the light control system.	• **Appears while driving** - Manually turn the lights on, and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	• Appears if there is a problem with the headlights.	• **Appears while driving** - The headlights may not be on. When conditions allow you to drive safely, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

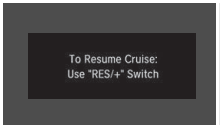
Models with ACC with LSF

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when ACC with LSF has been automatically canceled.	• You can resume the set speed after the condition that caused ACC with LSF to cancel improves. Press the **RES/ +** button. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 481
	• Appears when the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too close while ACC with LSF is in operation.	• ACC with LSF has been automatically canceled. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 481
	• Appears when pressing the **–/SET** button while the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too close.	• ACC with LSF cannot be set. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 481
	• Appears when the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is automatically stopped by ACC with LSF.	• ACC with LSF has been automatically canceled. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 481
	• Appears when pressing the **–/SET** button while the driver's seat belt is unfastened.	• ACC with LSF cannot be set. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 481

* Not available on all models

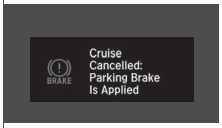
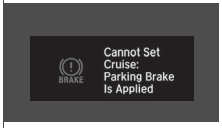
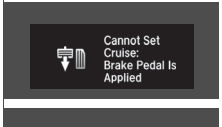
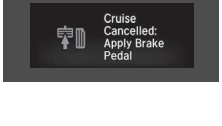
Continued

Models with ACC with LSF

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when the vehicle in front of you starts moving while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with LSF.	• Either press the **RES/+** button or **–/SET** button, or depress the accelerator pedal. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 481
	• Appears when the shift lever is moved into any position other than D or S while ACC with LSF is in operation.	• ACC with LSF has been automatically canceled. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 481
	• Appears when pressing the **–/SET** button while the shift lever is in any position other than D or S.	• ACC with LSF cannot be set. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 481
	• Appears when the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope while ACC with LSF is in operation.	• ACC with LSF has been automatically canceled. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 481

 * Not available on all models

Models with ACC with LSF

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when pressing the **–/SET** button while the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.	• ACC with LSF cannot be set. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 481
	• Appears when the parking brake is applied automatically while ACC with LSF is in operation.	• ACC with LSF has been automatically canceled. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 481 ➡ **Parking Brake** P. 524
	• Appears when pressing the **–/SET** button while the parking brake is applied.	• ACC with LSF cannot be set. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 481 ➡ **Parking Brake** P. 524
	• Appears when pressing the **–/SET** button while the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is depressed.	• ACC with LSF cannot be set. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 481
	• Appears if ACC with LSF is canceled while your vehicle is automatically stopped by ACC with LSF.	• Immediately depress the brake pedal.

* Not available on all models

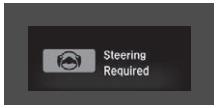
Continued

Models with ACC with LSF

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Flashes when the system senses a likely collision with a vehicle in front of you.	• Take the appropriate means to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.) ➔ **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*** P. 532 ➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*** P. 481

 * Not available on all models

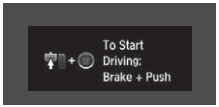
Models with LKAS

Message	Condition	Explanation
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) • Appears when the vehicle is driving out of a detected line. The steering wheel vibrates rapidly.	• Keep the vehicle within the lane you are driving. ➡ **Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System*** P. 497
	Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System • Appears when the vehicle is driving out of a detected lane. When you selected **Warning Only** - The steering wheel vibrates rapidly when the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane. When you selected **Normal** or **Wide** - The steering wheel vibrates rapidly when the vehicle is drifting out of a detected line. The system also steers the vehicle to help you remain within your driving lane.	• Keep the vehicle within the lane you are driving. ➡ **Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System*** P. 497 • You can change the setting for the road departure mitigation system. **Normal**, **Wide**, and **Warning Only** can be selected. ➡ **Customized Features** P. 351
	• Blinks when you fail to steer the vehicle. The beeper sounds simultaneously.	• Operate the steering wheel to resume the LKAS.

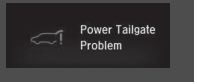
* Not available on all models

Continued

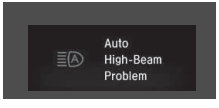
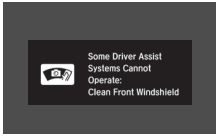
Models with remote engine starter

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when you unlock and open the driver's door while the engine is running by remote engine start.	**Remote Engine Start with Vehicle Feedback*** P. 464

Models with power tail gate

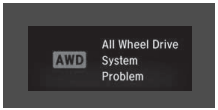
Message	Condition	Explanation
U.S.  Canada 	• Appears when there is a problem with the power tailgate system.	• Manually open or close the power tailgate. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Models with Auto high-beam system

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears if there is a problem with the Auto high-beam system.	• Manually operate the headlight switch. • If you are driving with the high-beam headlights when this happens, the headlights are changed to low beams.
	• Appears when the area around the camera on the windshield is blocked by dirt, mud, etc.	• Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. • If the message does not disappear after cleaning the lens, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Models with real time AWD with intelligent control system™

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears if there is a problem with the real time AWD with intelligent control system™.	• The engine drives the front wheels only in this state. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	• Appears when the differential temperature is too high.	• Stop in a safe place, put the transmission into P, and idle the engine until the message disappears. If the message does not disappear, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System™*** P. 517

* Not available on all models

Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, tachometer, fuel gauge, and related indicators. They are displayed when the ignition switch is in ON II*1.

■ Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in mph (U.S.) or km/h (Canada).

■ Tachometer

Shows the number of engine revolutions per minute.

■ Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

■ Temperature Gauge

Displays the temperature of the engine coolant.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Gauges

Models with information display

Press and hold the mile (U.S.)/km (Canada) change knob until you hear a beep. The speedometer reading and the displayed measurements switch between mph (U.S.) and /h (Canada).

Models with driver information interface

Press the (display/information) button repeatedly until the icon is shown on the driver information interface. Press **ENTER**, then press and hold it again. The speedometer reading and the displayed measurements will switch between mph (U.S.) and km/h (Canada).

Fuel Gauge

NOTICE

You should refuel when the reading approaches E. Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

Temperature Gauge

NOTICE

Driving with the temperature gauge pointer in the upper zone can cause serious engine damage. Pull safely to the side of the road and allow engine temperature to return to normal.

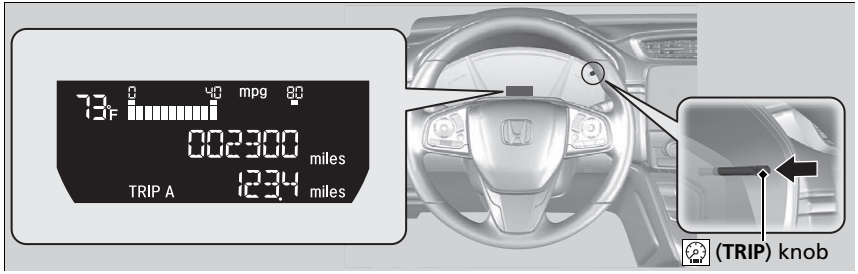
➡ **Overheating** P. 633

Information Display*

The information display shows the odometer, trip meter, engine oil life and maintenance service item codes, and other gauges.

Switching the Display

Press the (**TRIP**) knob to change the display.



Odometer

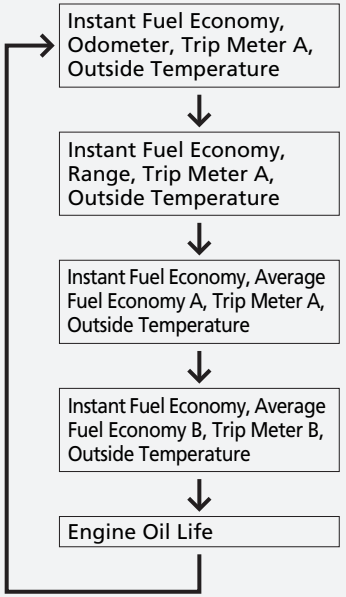
Shows the total number of miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada) that your vehicle has accumulated.

Trip Meter

Shows the total number of miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada) driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

Switching the Display

Each time you press the knob, the information display changes as follows:



* Not available on all models

Continued

■ **Resetting a trip meter**

To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the RESET knob. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

■ Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in mpg or l/100 km. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

Average Fuel Economy

Press and hold the mile (U.S.)/km (Canada) change knob to switch the measurement.

■ Instant Fuel Economy Gauge

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in mpg or l/100km.

Instant Fuel Economy Gauge

Press and hold the mile (U.S.)/km (Canada) change knob to switch the measurement.

■ Engine Oil Life

Shows the remaining oil life and Maintenance Minder™.

➡ **Maintenance Minder™** P. 559

■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This distance is estimated from the fuel economy of your previous trips.

Range

Press and hold the mile (U.S.)/km (Canada) change knob to switch the measurement.

■ Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Fahrenheit (U.S.) or Celsius (Canada).

■ Adjusting the outside temperature indicator

Adjust the temperature reading up to ± 5°F or ± 3°C if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

1. Turn the ignition switch to ON II*1.

2. Press and hold the (**TRIP**) knob for 10 seconds or more while the outside temperature is shown on the information display.

▶ The information display goes into temperature adjustment mode. The display starts showing from -5°F to +5°F (U.S.) or -3°C to +3°C (Canada).

3. Release the knob when the right adjustment amount is shown.

▶ The adjustment is complete.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 19 mph (30 km/h).

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

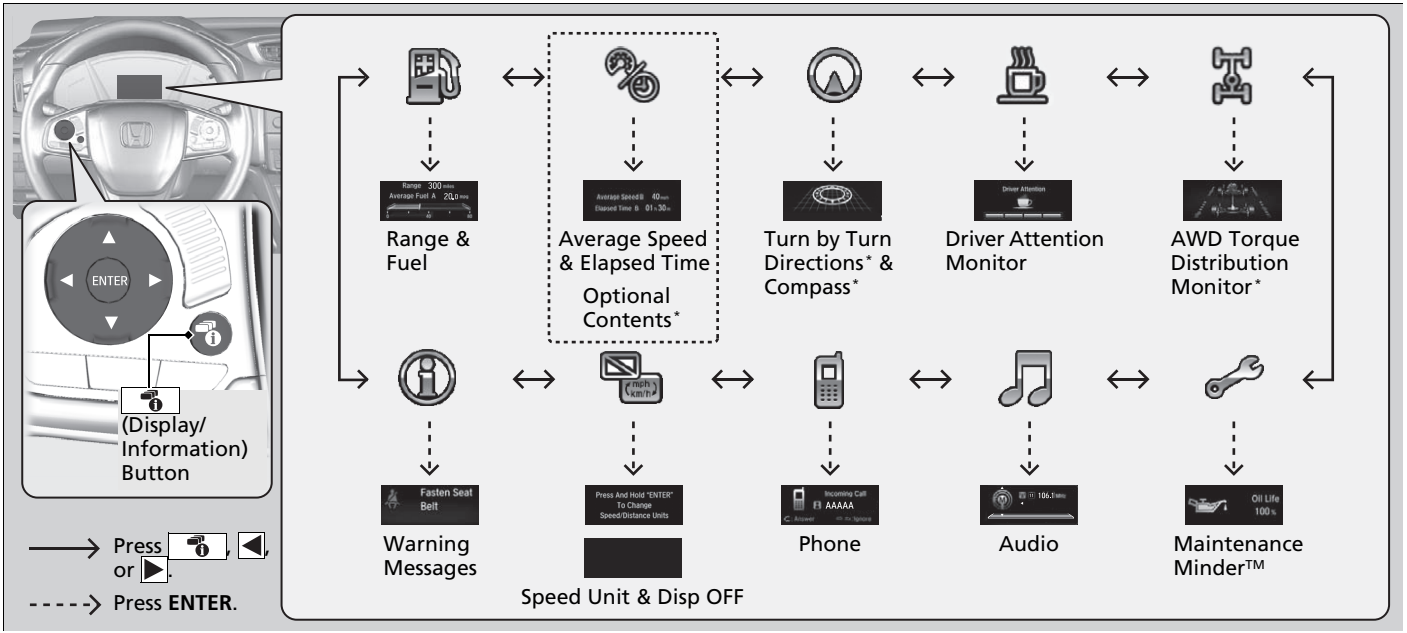
Driver Information Interface*

The driver information interface shows the odometer, trip meter, outside temperature indicator, and other gauges.
It also displays important messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

■ Switching the Display

■ Main displays

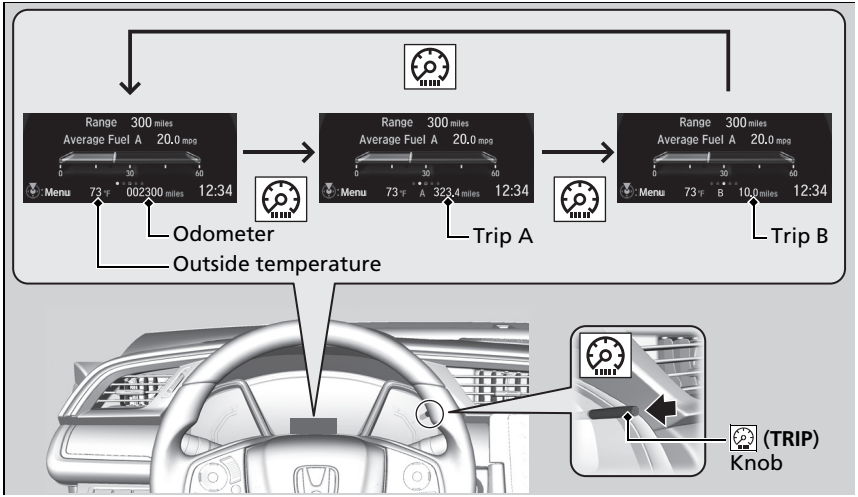
Press the (display/information) button and press ◀ or ▶ to change the display. Press **ENTER** to see detailed information.



* Not available on all models

■ Trip computer

Press the (**TRIP**) knob to change the display.



■ Odometer

Shows the total number of miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada) that your vehicle has accumulated.

■ Trip Meter

Shows the total number of miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada) driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

Trip Meter

Switch between trip meter A and trip meter B by pressing the knob, or by using the customized features on the audio/information display.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 351

Continued

■ **Resetting a trip meter**
To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the knob. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in mpg or l/100 km. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This distance is estimated from the fuel economy of your previous trips.

Elapsed Time

Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

Average Speed

Shows the average speed in mph (U.S.) or km/h (Canada) since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

Engine Oil Life

Shows the remaining oil life and Maintenance Minder™.

➡ **Maintenance Minder™** P. 559

Average Fuel Economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 351

Elapsed Time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 351

Average Speed

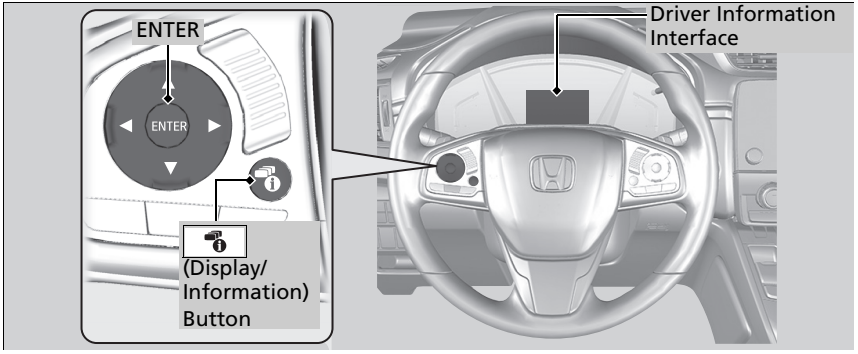
You can change when to reset the average speed.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 351

Continued

■ Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor analyzes steering inputs to determine if the vehicle is being driven in a manner consistent with drowsy or inattentive driving. If it determines that the vehicle is being driven in such a manner, it will display the degree of the driver's attention in the Driver Information Interface.





Level

When the (display/information) button is pressed, bars in the Driver Information Interface light up in white to indicate the degree of the driver's attention.

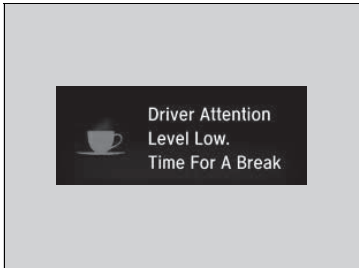
Switching the Display P. 119

Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor cannot always detect if the driver is tired or inattentive.
Regardless of the system's feedback, if you are feeling tired, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.



If two bars light up, the **Driver Attention Level Low** message will appear.



If one bar lights up, the **Driver Attention Level Low. Time For A Break** message will appear, a beep will sound, and the steering wheel will vibrate.
If this message appears, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.
The message will disappear when the **ENTER** button is pressed or when the system has determined that the driver is driving normally.
If the driver does not take a break and the monitor continues to detect that the driver is very tired, the message will appear again after approximately 15 minutes, accompanied by a beep and steering wheel vibrations.
The message does not appear when the traveling time is 30 minutes or less.

■ The Driver Attention Monitor resets when

- the engine is turned off.
- the driver unfastens the seat belt and opens the door while the vehicle is stopped.

Continued

■ **For the Driver Attention Monitor to function**
- the vehicle must be traveling above 25 mph (40 km/h).
- the electric power steering (EPS) system indicator must be off.

■ **Depending on driving conditions or other factors, the Driver Attention Monitor may not function in the following circumstances.**
- the steering assist function of the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)* is active.
  Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)* P. 501
- the condition of the road is poor, e.g. the surface is unpaved or bumpy.
- it is windy.
- the driver is frequently operating the vehicle in an assertive manner such as changing lanes or accelerating.

■ **Customizing**
You can change the Driver Attention Monitor settings. Select **Tactile And Audible Alert**, **Tactile Alert**, or **OFF**.
Customized Features P. 351

For the Driver Attention Monitor to function

The bars in the Driver Information Interface remain grayed out unless the Driver Attention Monitor is functioning.

 * Not available on all models

Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Fahrenheit (U.S.) or Celsius (Canada).

Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading up to ±5°F or ±3°C if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

Use the driver information interface's* or audio/information display's* customized features to correct the temperature.

Customized Features P. 351

Instant Fuel Economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in mpg or l/100 km.

AWD Torque Distribution Monitor*



The indicators on the display show the amount of torque being transferred to the right front, left front, right rear, and left rear wheels.

Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System™* P. 517

Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 19 mph (30 km/h).

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Turn-by-Turn Directions*

Shows you turn-by-turn driving directions to your destination linked with the navigation system.

➡ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

■ Audio

Show the current audio information.

➡ **Audio System Basic Operation** P. 260

■ Phone

Show the current phone information.

➡ ***Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®** P. 387

Turn-by-Turn Directions*

The driver information interface shows a compass when the route guidance is not used.

You can select whether the turn-by-turn display comes on during the route guidance.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 351

* Not available on all models

Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.



Clock 132
Locking and Unlocking the Doors
Key Types and Functions 134
Low Smart Entry Remote Signal Strength* ... 136
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside 137
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside ... 144
Childproof Door Locks 145
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 146
Customizing the Auto Door Locking/Unlocking Setting 147
Opening and Closing the Tailgate ... 150
Security System
Immobilizer System 161
Security System Alarm* 161
Opening and Closing the Windows 164
Moonroof* 167
Panoramic Roof*1 168
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel
Ignition Switch* 171
ENGINE START/STOP Button* 172
Ignition Switch and Power Mode Comparison 175
Turn Signals 176
Light Switches 177
Fog Lights* 180
Auto High-Beam System* 181
Daytime Running Lights 184
Wipers and Washers 185
Brightness Control 188
Defogger/Heated Door Mirror* 190
Driving Position Memory System* 192
Adjusting the Steering Wheel 194
Adjusting the Mirrors 195
Adjusting the Seats 197
Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items .. 207
Climate Control System
Using Automatic Climate Control 226
Synchronization Mode* 229
Automatic Climate Control Sensors 230

(*1: Canadian models only, if equipped)

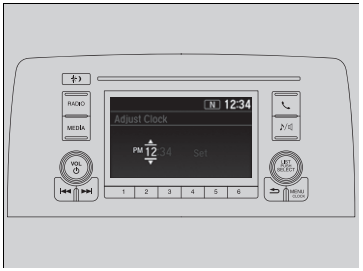
* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Clock

Models without navigation system

You can adjust the time in the clock display with the ignition switch in ON II*1.

■ Adjusting the Time



Models with color audio system

■ Using the MENU/CLOCK button

1. Press and hold the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
   ▶ **Adjust Clock** is selected.
2. Rotate to change hour, then press.
3. Rotate to change minute, then press.
4. To enter the selection, rotate and select **Set**, then press.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Adjusting the Clock

Models with navigation system

The clock is automatically updated through the navigation system, so the time does not need to be adjusted.

Models with color audio system

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 351

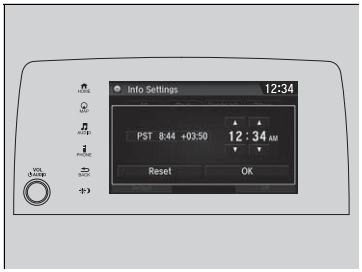
Using the MENU/CLOCK button

Models with color audio system

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

Rotate to select.

Press to enter.



Models with Display Audio

■ Using the Settings menu on the audio/information screen

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock**.
3. Select **Clock Adjustment**.
4. Select ▲ or ▼ to change hour.
5. Select ▲ or ▼ to change minute, then select **OK**.

Using the Settings menu on the audio/information screen

Models with Display Audio

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock and turn the clock display on and off.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 351

Models with Display Audio

The clock is automatically updated when your smartphone is connected to the audio system.

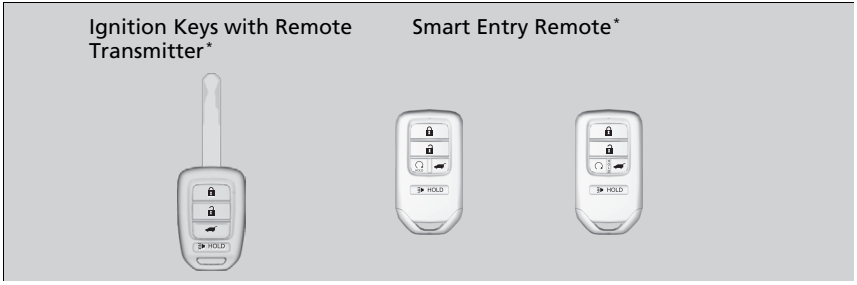
You can also adjust the clock by touching the clock displayed on the upper right corner of the display.

1. Touch the clock on the display for a few seconds.
2. Select **Clock Adjustment**.
3. Select ▲ or ▼ to change hour.
4. Select ▲ or ▼ to change minute, then select **OK**.

Key Types and Functions

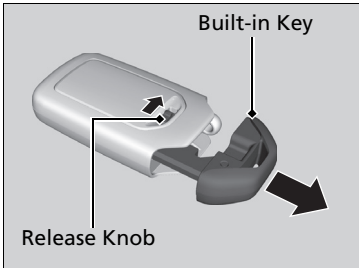
This vehicle comes with the following keys:

■ Keys



Use the key to start and stop the engine, and to lock and unlock the doors and tailgate. You can also lock and unlock the doors and tailgate pressing the buttons on remote transmitter.

■ Built-in Key*



The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors when the smart entry remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled.
To remove the built-in key, slide the release knob and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the smart entry remote until it clicks.

Key Types and Functions

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps protect against vehicle theft.

➡ **Immobilizer System** P. 161

The keys contain precision electronics.
Adhere to the following advice to prevent damage to the electronics:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids.
- Do not take the keys apart except for replacing the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the engine may not start, and the remote transmitter may not work.
If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

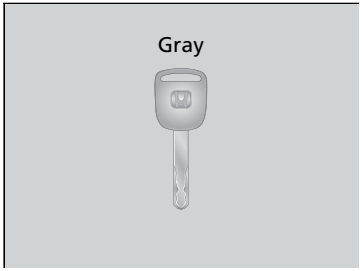
Models with remote engine starter

You can remotely start the engine using the one-way smart entry remote.

➡ **Remote Engine Start with Vehicle Feedback*** P. 464

* Not available on all models

Valet Key*

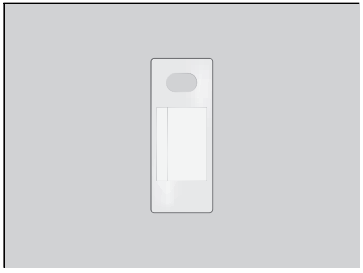


Can be used to start and stop the engine, and lock and unlock driver's door.

Valet Key*

When you need to leave a key with a third party, leave the valet key.

Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.
If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot start the engine, contact a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Low Smart Entry Remote Signal Strength*

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the smart entry remote when locking/unlocking the doors, opening the tailgate, or to start the engine.

In the following cases, locking/unlocking the doors, opening the tailgate, or starting the engine may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the smart entry remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, cell phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the smart entry remote.

Low Smart Entry Remote Signal Strength*

Communication between the smart entry remote and the vehicle consumes the smart entry remote's battery.

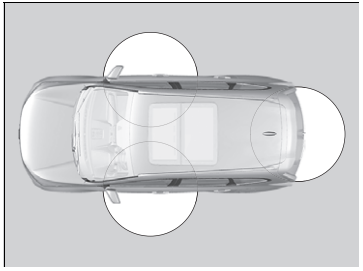
Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.

The battery is consumed whenever the smart entry remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

* Not available on all models

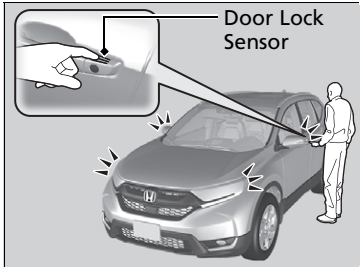
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

■ Using the Smart Entry with Push Button Start System*



When you carry the smart entry remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and open the tailgate.

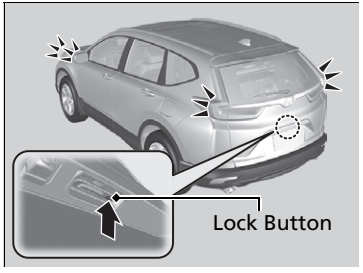
You can lock/unlock the doors within a radius of about 32 inches (80 cm) of the outside door handle. You can open the tailgate within about 32 inches (80 cm) radius from the tailgate release button.



■ Locking the doors and tailgate

Touch the door lock sensor on the front door or press the lock button on the tailgate.

▶ Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all the doors and tailgate lock; and the security system sets.



Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you unlock the doors and tailgate.

No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.

Doors and tailgate relocked: The light goes off immediately.

➡ **Interior Lights** P. 207

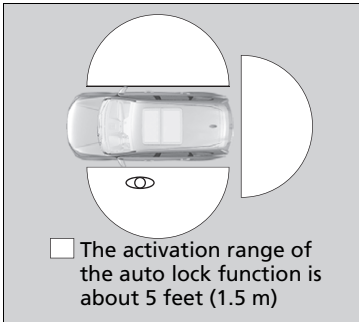
Using the Smart Entry with Push Button Start System*

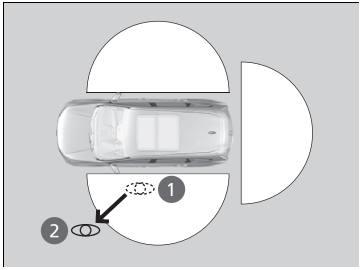
If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the smart entry system, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors using the smart entry system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

* Not available on all models

Continued





■ Locking the vehicle (Walk away auto lock)

When you walk away from the vehicle while carrying the smart entry remote, the doors will automatically lock.

The auto lock function activates when all doors are closed, and the smart entry remote is within about 5 feet (1.5 m) radius of the outside door handle.

Exit vehicle while carrying smart entry remote and close door(s).

1. While within about 5 feet (1.5 m) radius of the vehicle.
▶ The beeper sounds; the auto lock function will be activated.

2. Carry the smart entry remote beyond about 5 feet (1.5 m) from the vehicle and remain outside this range for 2 or more seconds.
▶ Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all doors will then lock.

Locking the vehicle (Walk away auto lock)

The auto lock function is set to OFF as the factory default setting. The auto lock function can be set to ON using the audio/information screen.

Customized Features P. 351

After the auto lock function has been activated, when you stay within the locking/unlocking operation range, the indicator on the smart entry remote will continue to flash until the doors are locked.

When you stay beside the vehicle within the operation range, the doors will automatically lock approximately 30 seconds after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds.

When you open a door after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds, the auto lock function will be canceled.

When all doors have been closed and the smart entry remote is inside the vehicle, or if the smart entry remote is not detected within about 5 feet (1.5 m) of the vehicle, auto lock function will not be activated.

To temporarily deactivate the function:

1. Set the power mode to OFF.
2. Open the driver's door.
3. Using the master door lock switch, operate the lock as follows:
Lock → Unlock → Lock → Unlock.
▶ The beeper sounds and the function is deactivated.

To restore the function:

- Set the power mode to ON.
- Lock the vehicle without using the auto lock function.
- Walk away at least more than about 5 feet (1.5 m) away from the vehicle while carrying the smart entry remote.

Locking the vehicle (Walk away auto lock)

The auto lock function does not operate when any of the following conditions are met.

- The smart entry remote is inside the vehicle.
- A door or the hood is not closed.
- The power mode is set to any mode other than OFF.
- The smart entry remote is not located within a radius of about 5 feet (1.5 m) from the vehicle when you get out of the vehicle and close the doors.

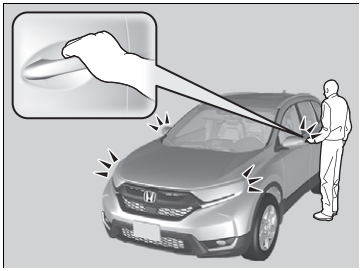
Auto lock function operation stop beeper

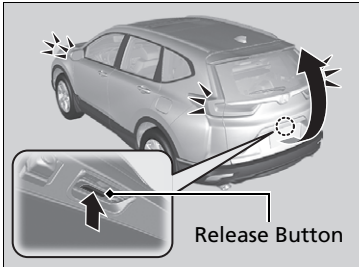
After the auto lock function has been activated, the auto lock operation stop beeper sounds for approximately two seconds in the following cases.

- The smart entry remote is put inside the vehicle through a window.
- You are located too close to the vehicle.
- The smart entry remote is put inside the tailgate.

If the warning beeper sounds, check that you are carrying the smart entry remote. Then, open/close a door and confirm the auto lock activation beeper sounds once.

Continued





■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate

Grab the driver's door handle:

▶ The driver's door unlocks.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

Grab the front passenger's door handle:

▶ All the doors and tailgate unlock.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

Press the tailgate release button:

▶ The tailgate unlocks.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

➡ **Using the Tailgate Release Button** P. 159

Using the Smart Entry with Push Button Start System*

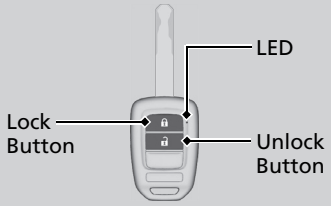
- Do not leave the smart entry remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the smart entry remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.
- The door may be locked or unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the smart entry remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle or touch a door lock sensor wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by locking or unlocking the doors.
- After locking the door, you have up to 2 seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least 2 seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door might not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 32 inches (80 cm) radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors with the smart entry remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The smart entry remote may not operate if it is too close to the door and door glass.
- The light flashes, and beeper sounds and unlock settings can be customized on the audio/information screen.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 351

 * Not available on all models

■ Using the Remote Transmitter

Ignition keys with remote transmitter



Models with smart entry remote





■ Locking the doors

Press the lock button.

Once:

▶ Some exterior lights flash, all the doors and tailgate lock, and the security system sets.

Twice (within five seconds after the first push):

▶ The beeper sounds and verifies the security system is set.

■ Unlocking the doors

Press the unlock button.

Once:

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice, and the driver's door unlocks.

Twice:

▶ The remaining doors and tailgate unlock.

Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

Models with Display Audio

You can change the relock timer setting.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 351

The remote transmitter will not work when:

Ignition keys with remote transmitter

- The key is in the ignition switch.

Models with smart entry remote

- The power mode is not in VEHICLE OFF.

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

The remote will not lock the vehicle when a door is open.

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.
If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

➡ **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 608

Models with Display Audio

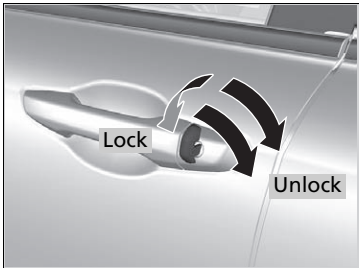
You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 351

Continued

■ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the smart entry remote battery or the vehicle battery is dead, use the key instead of the smart entry remote.



Fully insert the key and turn it.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door with a key, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time. When unlocking, the driver's door unlocks first. Turn the key a second time within a few seconds to unlock the remaining doors and the tailgate.

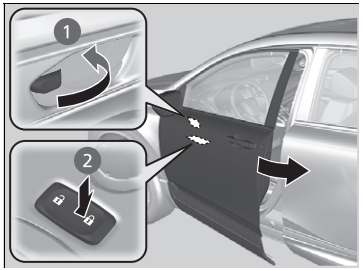
Models with Display Audio

You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 351

Unlocking the doors with the key causes the security system to alarm. Always unlock the doors with the remote transmitter.

■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key



■ Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward ❶ or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction ❷, and close the door.

■ Locking the passenger's doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

■ Lockout prevention system

Ignition keys with remote transmitter

The doors and tailgate cannot be locked when the key is in the ignition switch.

Models with smart entry remote

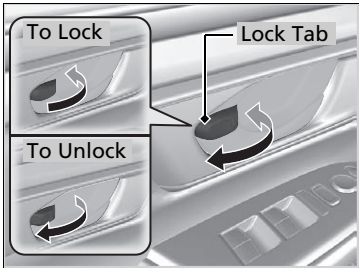
The doors and tailgate cannot be locked when the smart entry remote is inside the vehicle.

Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time.
Make sure you have the key in your hand when you lock the driver's door, any of the other doors or the tailgate, otherwise you may end up locking the key inside the vehicle.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

■ Using the Lock Tab



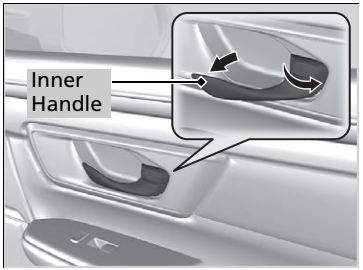
■ Locking a door
Push the lock tab forward.

■ Unlocking a door
Pull the lock tab rearward.

Using the Lock Tab

When you lock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all of the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time.
When you unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, only the driver's door will unlock.

■ Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle



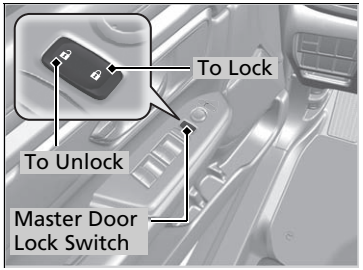
Pull the front door inner handle.
▶ The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle

The front door inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a front door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.
➡ **Childproof Door Locks** P. 145

■ Using the Master Door Lock Switch

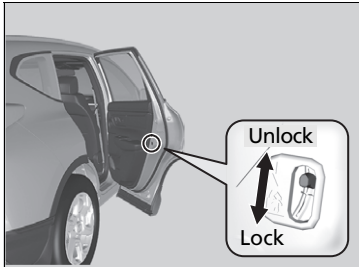


Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all doors and the tailgate.

Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

Using the Master Door Lock Switch

When you lock/unlock the driver's door using the master door lock switch, all the other doors and the tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

The front passenger's door also has the master door lock switch.

Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

Your vehicle locks all doors and unlocks the all doors automatically when a certain condition is met.

■ Auto Door Locking

■ Drive lock mode

All doors and tailgate lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 10 mph (15 km/h).

■ Auto Door Unlocking

■ Driver's door open mode

All doors unlock when the driver's door is opened.

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the master door lock switch.

➔ **Customizing the Auto Door Locking/ Unlocking Setting** P. 147

Models with Display Audio

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the audio/ information screen.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 351

Customizing the Auto Door Locking/Unlocking Setting

You can customize the auto door locking/unlocking setting to your liking using the master door lock switch.

List of the Auto Door Locking/Unlocking Customizable Options

■ Auto door locking

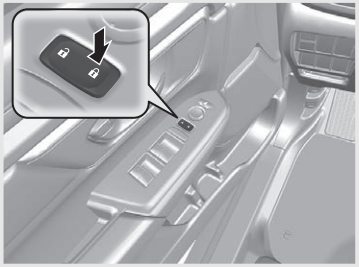
Mode	Description
Drive Lock Mode[*1]	All doors lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 10 mph (15 km/h).
Off	The auto door locking is deactivated all the time.

■ Auto door unlocking

Mode	Description
Driver's Door Open Mode[*1]	All doors unlock when the driver's door is opened.
Park Unlock Mode	All doors unlock when the shift lever is moved into P with the brake pedal depressed.
Off	The auto door unlocking is deactivated all the time.

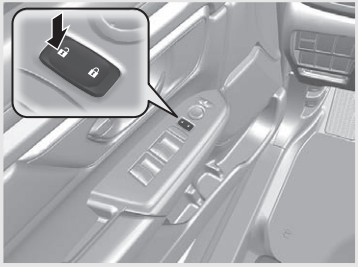
*1:Default setting

■ Customizing Flow for Auto Door Locking Options

Steps	Drive Lock Mode*2	Off
1	Apply the parking brake. Move the shift lever to P.	
2	Close the driver's door.	Open the driver's door.
3	Turn the ignition switch to ON II*1.	
4	Move the shift lever out of P with the brake pedal depressed.	—
5	Press and hold the right side of the master door lock switch on the driver's door for more than five seconds. Release the switch after you hear a click twice. 	Press and hold the right side of the master door lock switch on the driver's door for more than five seconds. Release the switch after you hear one click.
6	Move the shift lever to P.	—
7	Turn the ignition switch to ACCESSORY I*1 within 20 seconds. ▶ Customization is completed.	

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.
*2:Default setting

■ Customizing Flow for Auto Door Unlocking Options

Steps	Driver's Door Open Mode*2	Park Unlock Mode	Off
1	Apply the parking brake. Move the shift lever to P.		
2	Close the driver's door.		Open the driver's door.
3	Turn the ignition switch to ON II*1.		
4	Move the shift lever out of P with the brake pedal depressed.	—	
5	Press and hold the left side of the master door lock switch on the driver's door for more than five seconds. Release the switch after you hear a click twice. 		
6	Move the shift lever to P.	—	
7	Turn the ignition switch to ACCESSORY I*1 within 20 seconds. ▶ Customization is completed.		

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.
*2:Default setting

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

Models without power tailgate

- Open the tailgate all the way.
  ▶ If it is not fully opened, the tailgate may begin to close under its own weight.
- Be careful when it is windy. The wind may cause the tailgate to close.

All models

Keep the tailgate closed while driving to:

▶ Avoid possible damage.

▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.

Carbon Monoxide Gas P. 76

⚠WARNING

Anyone caught in the path of a tailgate that is being opened or closed can be seriously injured.

Make sure that all people are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

Be careful not to hit your head on the tailgate or to put your hands between the tailgate and the cargo area when closing the tailgate.

When you are storing or picking up cargo from the cargo area, or by raising and lowering your foot under the center of the rear bumper for hands free access*, while the engine is idling, do not stand in front of the exhaust pipe. You may get burned.

Do not allow any passenger in the cargo space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.

* Not available on all models

Models with power tailgate

The power tailgate can be operated by pressing the power tailgate button on the remote transmitter, pressing the power tailgate button in the driver side control panel, pressing the button on the tailgate, or by raising and lowering your foot under the center of the rear bumper for hands free access*.

The power tailgate can be opened/closed when the transmission is in P.

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Models with power tailgate

NOTICE

Do not push or pull on the power tailgate when it is being automatically opened or closed.
Forcibly opening or closing the power tailgate while in operation can deform the tailgate frame.

When operating the power tailgate, make sure there is enough space around your vehicle. People near the tailgate may be seriously hurt if the tailgate hits or closes on their heads. Be especially cautious if children are around.

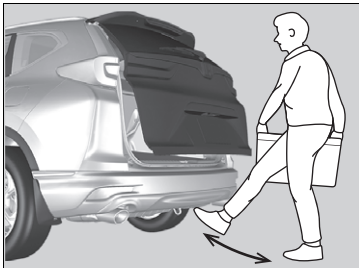
The power tailgate may not open or close under the following conditions:
- You start the engine while the tailgate is automatically opening or closing.
- The vehicle is parked on a steep hill.
- The vehicle is swayed in a strong wind.
- The tailgate or the roof is covered with snow or ice.

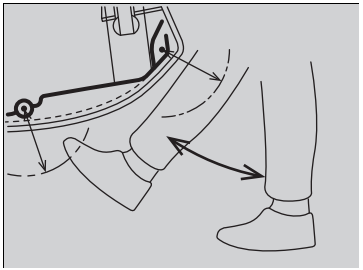
If you close the power tailgate with all the doors locked, the power tailgate locks automatically.

* Not available on all models

Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

■ Using the Hands Free Access*





Use a forward and back kicking motion under the center of the rear bumper to open or close the power tailgate while carrying the smart entry remote.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and a beeper sounds once, then the tailgate begins to move.

Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

During heavy rain or in other instances when the vehicle becomes very wet, the sensor may not properly detect your foot motion.

When performing work on or around the rear section of the vehicle, you may inadvertently open or close the tailgate.
To prevent this from happening, select Customized Features on the audio/information screen display and then select OFF for the feature.

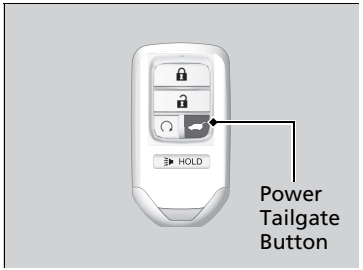
➔ **Customized Features** P. 351

If you hold your foot under the bumper for too long, the power tailgate does not open or close.

This function will not operate if you don't have the smart entry remote on you. Please make sure you have the smart entry remote on you.

 * Not available on all models

■ Using the Remote Transmitter



Press the power tailgate button for more than one second to operate when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

▶ Some exterior lights flash and the beeper sounds.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop.
Press the button for more than one second, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

■ Customizing when to open the tailgate

Anytime: The power tailgate unlocks and opens at the same time. This is the default setting.

When Unlocked: The tailgate opens when all doors are unlocked.

➲ **Customized Features** P. 351

Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

If you close the power tailgate when all the doors are locked, the power tailgate locks automatically.

If you replace the battery or the power tailgate fuse while the tailgate is open, the power tailgate may be disabled. The power tailgate resumes once you manually close the tailgate.

Installing aftermarket components other than genuine Honda accessories on the power tailgate may prevent it from fully opening or closing.

Make sure the power tailgate is fully open before you get your cargo in and out.

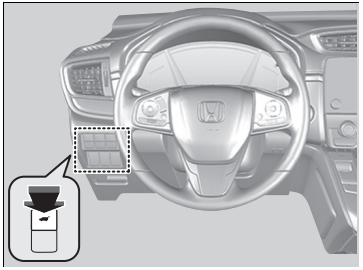
Make sure the power tailgate is fully closed before you start the vehicle.

The beeper sounds when you start driving while the power tailgate is still open, or closing.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Using the Power Tailgate Button



To open or close the power tailgate, press the power tailgate button for about one second. Some exterior lights flash and the beeper sounds.

▶ Some exterior lights flash and the beeper sounds.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop.
Press the button for about one second, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

If the power tailgate meets resistance while opening or closing, the auto reverse feature reverses the direction. The beeper sounds three times.

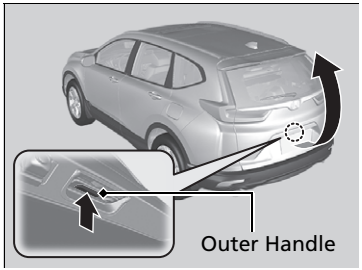
The auto reverse function stops sensing when the tailgate is almost closed to make sure that it fully closes.

Do not touch the sensors located on both sides of the tailgate. The power tailgate does not close if you touch either sensor when you are trying to close the tailgate.

Be careful not to scratch the sensors with a sharp object. If scratched, they can be damaged, and the power tailgate closing feature malfunctions.

* Not available on all models

Using the Tailgate Outer Handle



If you press the outer handle of the tailgate for no longer than one second, the tailgate opens automatically.

▶ The beeper sounds.

▶ If you want to open the tailgate manually, press the button for more than one second.

➡ **Opening and Closing the Tailgate** P. 150

If you are carrying the smart entry remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.

To close the tailgate, press the outer handle again while the tailgate opening.

If you press the outer handle again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop.
Press the outer handle, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

Do not leave the key, remote transmitter*, or smart entry remote* in the cargo area before closing the tailgate.

Even if you are not carrying the smart entry remote, you can lock/unlock the tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.

You can change the power tailgate operation setting on and off.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 351

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Using the Tailgate Inner Button

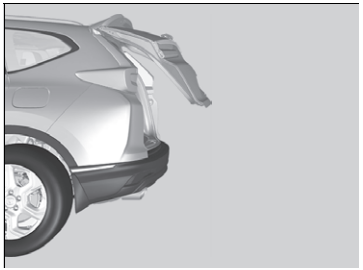


Press the button on the tailgate to close the power tailgate.

▶ The beeper sounds.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop. Press and release the button again, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

Programming Tailgate Position





The extent to which the power tailgate automatically opens can be programed.

To program:

1. Open the tailgate to the desired position.
▶ If you want to reprogram the power tailgate to open all the way, manually raise the tailgate to its upper most position and follow the next step.

2. Press and hold the tailgate inner button until you hear short two beeps following one long buzzer.

Programming Tailgate Position

If the tailgate is only slightly opened, the position cannot be programmed, even if you push the inner button.

Continued

■ Auto-Closer

If you manually close the power tailgate, it latches automatically.

Auto-Closer

The auto-closer feature does not activate if you press the tailgate outer handle while the power tailgate is closing.

Do not put any force on the tailgate while the power tailgate is latching.

Keep your hands away from the tailgate when you manually close the tailgate and let it latch automatically. It is dangerous to put your hands around the tailgate as it starts to latch itself.

■ Power Tailgate Fall Detection

Automatically lowers the power tailgate when there is a possibility that the fully opened power tailgate can fall down by its own weight (for example, by snow on the tailgate). The beeper sounds while the power tailgate lowers.

Power Tailgate Fall Detection

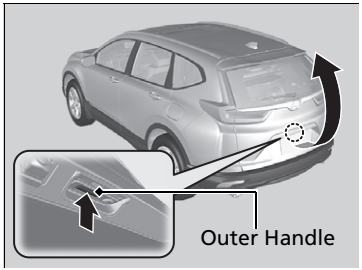
If you try to manually close the power tailgate immediately after it fully opens, the power tailgate fall detection may be activated.

Once the power tailgate fall detection activates, wait until the power tailgate fully closes. Keep away from the power tailgate when it is in motion.

If the power tailgate fall detection constantly activates, consult at a dealer.

Opening/Closing the Tailgate

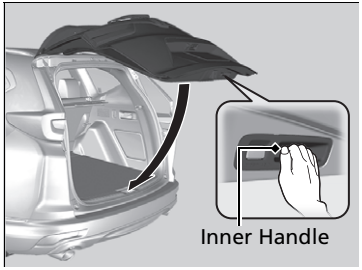
Using the Tailgate Release Button



When all the doors are unlocked or press the tailgate unlock button on the remote transmitter, the tailgate is unlocked.
Press the tailgate release button and lift open the tailgate.

Models with smart entry system

If you are carrying the smart entry remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.



To close the tailgate, grab the inner handle, pull the tailgate down, and push it closed from outside.

Using the Tailgate Release Button

Do not leave the key, remote transmitter*, or smart entry remote* in the cargo area before closing the tailgate.

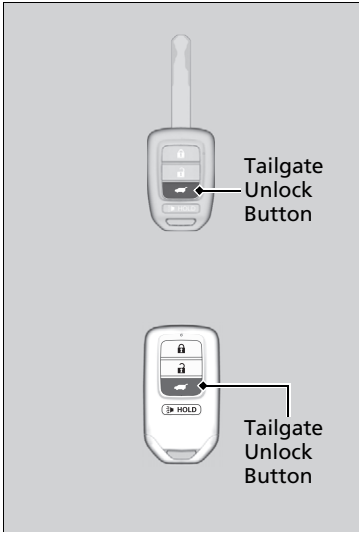
Models with smart entry system

Even if you are not carrying the smart entry remote, you can lock/unlock the tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Using the Remote Transmitter*



Press the tailgate unlock button to unlock the tailgate.

Using the Remote Transmitter*

If you have unlocked and opened the tailgate using the remote transmitter or smart entry remote*, when closing, the tailgate locks automatically.

* Not available on all models

Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the engine. Each key contains electronic transmitters that use electronic signals to verify the key.

Pay attention to the following when inserting the key into the ignition switch* or pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button*:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the ignition switch* or the **ENGINE START/STOP** button*.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the ignition switch* or the **ENGINE START/STOP** button*.

Immobilizer System

NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle.
Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

Canadian models only: Apply and hold the brake pedal before turning the vehicle on the first time after the battery has been disconnected.

Security System Alarm*

The security system alarm activates when the tailgate, hood or doors are forcibly opened. The alarm does not go off if the tailgate or doors are opened with the key, remote transmitter or smart entry system.

However, the alarm goes off if a door is opened with the key, then the shift lever is moved out of P or the hood is opened before the power mode is set to ON.

■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently and all the exterior lights flash.

Security System Alarm*

The security alarm continues for a maximum of two minutes until the security system deactivates.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the key, remote transmitter or smart entry system. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
- The hood and tailgate are closed.
- All doors and tailgate are locked with the key, the remote transmitter, or smart entry system.

■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks. When the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds, the security system alarm is set.

■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system is canceled when the vehicle is unlocked using the key, remote transmitter, smart entry system, or the power mode is set to ON. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

Security System Alarm*

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

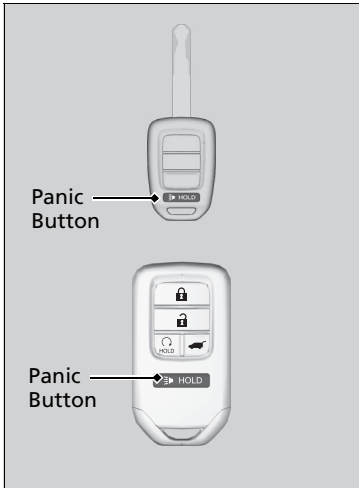
- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the hood with the hood release handle.
- Moving the shift lever out of P.

If the battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may go off once the battery is recharged or replaced.
If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the key or remote transmitter.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add another device to it.

* Not available on all models

■ Panic Mode



■ The panic button on the remote transmitter

If you press the panic button for approximately one second, the following will occur for about 30 seconds:

- The horn sounds.
- Some exterior lights flash.

■ Canceling panic mode

Press any button on the remote transmitter, or turn the ignition switch to ON II*1.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

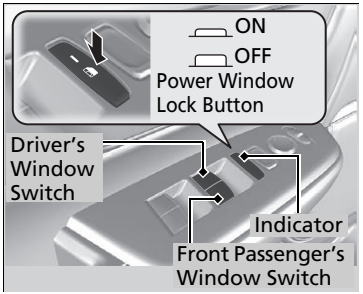
Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the ignition switch is in ON (II)*1, using the switches on the doors. The driver side switches can be used to open and close all the windows.

The power window lock button on the driver side must be switched off (not pushed in, indicator off) to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is switched on (pushed in, indicator on), you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

■ Opening/Closing Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



■ Automatic operation
To open: Push the switch down firmly.
To close: Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

■ Manual operation
To open: Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
To close: Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

⚠WARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you turn the ignition switch off*1. Opening either front door cancels this function.

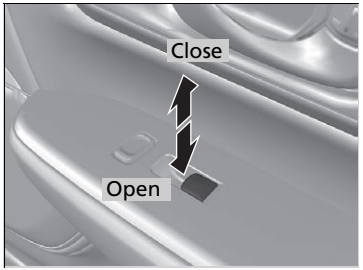
Auto Reverse
If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it stops closing and reverse direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

You cannot fully open the rear windows.

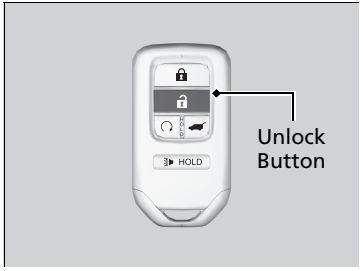
Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function



To open: Push the switch down.
To close: Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

Opening Windows and the Moonroof* or Panoramic Roof*1 with the Remote



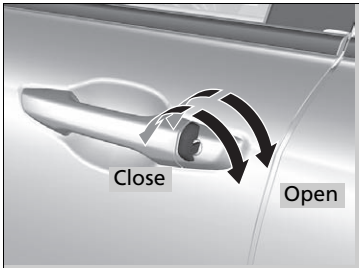
To open: Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and keep it pressed. If the windows and moonroof* or panoramic roof*1 stop midway, repeat the procedure.

*1: Canadian models only, if equipped

* Not available on all models

Continued

Opening/Closing Windows and the Moonroof* or Panoramic Roof*1 with the Key



To open: Unlock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the unlock direction and hold it there.

To close: Lock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the lock direction and hold it there.

Release the key to stop the windows/moonroof* or panoramic roof*1 at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.

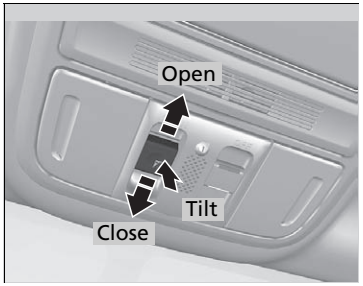
*1: Canadian models only, if equipped

* Not available on all models

Opening and Closing the Moonroof

You can operate the moonroof when the power mode is in ON. Use the switch in the front of the ceiling to open and close the moonroof.

■ Using the Moonroof Switch



■ Automatic operation
To open: Pull the switch back firmly.
To close: Push the switch forward firmly.

The moonroof automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the moonroof midway, touch the switch briefly.

■ Manual operation
To open: Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
To close: Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

■ Tilting the moonroof up
To tilt: Push on the center of the moonroof switch.
To close: Push the switch forward firmly, then release.

Using the Moonroof Switch

⚠WARNING

Opening or closing the moonroof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the moonroof before opening or closing it.

NOTICE
Opening the moonroof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the moonroof panel or motor.
The power moonroof can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
Opening either front door cancels this function.
When resistance is detected, the auto reverse function causes the moonroof to change directions, then stop. Auto reverse stops sensing when the moonroof is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes. Make sure that all objects, including fingers, are clear of the moonroof.
You can use the remote transmitter or the key to operate the moonroof.

➔ **Opening Windows and the Moonroof* or Panoramic Roof*1 with the Remote** P. 165
➔ **Opening/Closing Windows and the Moonroof* or Panoramic Roof*1 with the Key** P. 166

*1: Canadian models only, if equipped
* Not available on all models

Opening/Closing the Panoramic Roof

You can operate the panoramic roof when the power mode is in ON. Use the switch in the front of the ceiling to open and close the panoramic roof.

Opening/Closing the Panoramic Roof

⚠WARNING

Opening or closing the panoramic roof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the panoramic roof before opening or closing it.

NOTICE

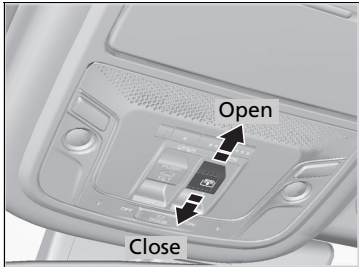
Opening the panoramic roof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the panoramic roof panel or motor.

The panoramic roof and sunshade can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
Opening either front door cancels this function.

When resistance is detected, the auto reverse function causes the panoramic roof to change directions, then stop. Auto reverse stops sensing when the panoramic roof is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes. Make sure that all objects, including fingers, are clear of the panoramic roof.

*1: Canadian models only, if equipped

■ Using the Sunshade Switch



■ Automatic operation
To open: Pull the switch back firmly.
To close: Push the switch forward firmly.

The sunshade automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the sunshade midway, touch the switch briefly.

■ Manual operation
To open: Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
To close: Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

Opening/Closing the Panoramic Roof

You can use the remote transmitter or the key to operate the panoramic roof.

➡ **Opening Windows and the Moonroof* or Panoramic Roof*1 with the Remote** P. 165
➡ **Opening/Closing Windows and the Moonroof* or Panoramic Roof*1 with the Key** P. 166

Using the Sunshade Switch

The sunshade can be opened or closed to adjust the amount of light that enters the cabin.

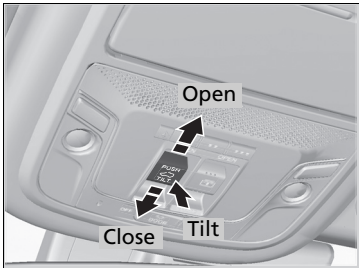
When you use the sunshade switch to open the sunshade, the panoramic roof does not move.

The sunshade cannot be fully closed if the panoramic roof is open. When you close the sunshade with the panoramic roof open, the sunshade stops slightly ahead of the panoramic roof glass. When you push the switch forward again, the sunshade and the panoramic roof close together.

*1: Canadian models only, if equipped
* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Using the Panoramic Roof Switch



■ Automatic operation

To open: Pull the switch back firmly.
To close: Push the switch forward firmly.

The panoramic roof automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the panoramic glass midway, touch the switch briefly.

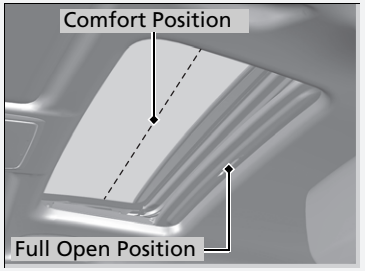
■ Manual operation

To open: Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
To close: Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

■ Tilting the panoramic roof up

To tilt: Push on the center of the panoramic roof switch.
To close: Push the switch forward firmly.

Using the Panoramic Roof Switch

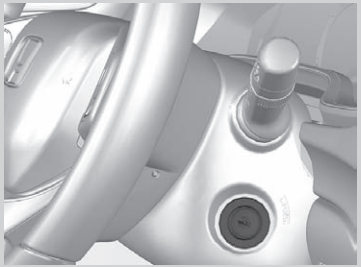


The panoramic roof cannot be fully opened in a single operation. The panoramic roof has a "comfort" position or wind noise reduction position at which the roof first stops. To open fully, pull the switch back again after the roof has stopped at this position.

Whenever the panoramic roof is opening, the sunshade moves along with it. However, when the panoramic roof is closing, the sunshade does not move.

When you tilt open the panoramic roof, the sunshade opens slightly to let in fresh air. When you close the panoramic roof from this position, the sunshade returns to its closed position.

Ignition Switch*



0 LOCK: Insert and remove the key in this position.

I ACCESSORY: Operate the audio system and other accessories in this position.

II ON: This is the position when driving.

III START: This position is for starting the engine. The switch returns to ON II when you let go of the key.

Ignition Switch*

You cannot take the key out unless the shift lever is in P.

If you open the driver's door when the key is in LOCK 0 or ACCESSORY I, a warning buzzer will sound to remind you to take the key out.

When this happens, the following messages appear on the driver information interface*:

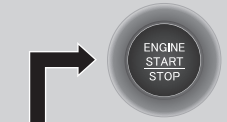
- In LOCK 0: or the symbol with a **Remove Key From Ignition**
- In ACCESSORY I: or the symbol with a **Return Ignition Switch To Lock (0) Position**
  The buzzer will stop when you take the key out.

If the key won't turn from LOCK 0 to ACCESSORY I, turn the key while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the key to turn.

* Not available on all models

ENGINE START/STOP Button*

■ Changing the Power Mode



VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)
The button is off.
The steering wheel is locked*1.
The power to all electrical components is turned off.



ACCESSORY
The button blinks (in red).
Operate the audio system and other accessories in this position.



ON
The button blinks (in red).
All electrical components can be used.

Without pressing the brake pedal

Press the button without the shift lever in P.

Press the button.

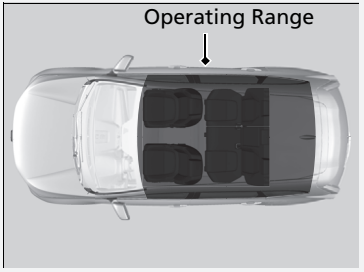
Shift to P then press the button.

U.S. models
Shift to P.

*1:Except U.S. models

ENGINE START/STOP Button*

ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range



You can start the engine when the smart entry remote is inside the vehicle.
The engine may also run if the smart entry remote is close to the door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.

If the battery of the smart entry remote is getting low, the engine may not start when you push the **ENGINE START/STOP** button. If the engine does not start, refer to the following link.

➡ **If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak** P. 627

The power system may also start if the smart entry remote is close to the door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.

* Not available on all models

■ Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the shift lever in P and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid the battery drain.

Canadian models

When in this mode:
The steering wheel does not lock.
You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the smart entry system.
Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button three times to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

ENGINE START/STOP Button*

Canadian models

If the power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF to ACCESSORY, press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the mode to change.

Do not leave the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON when you get out.

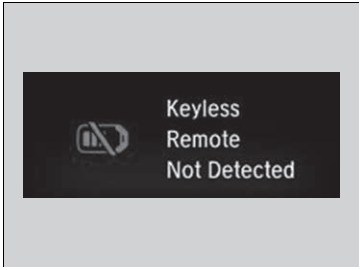
* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is set to ACCESSORY, a warning buzzer sounds.

■ Smart Entry Remote Reminder



Warning buzzers may sound from inside or/and outside the vehicle to remind you that the smart entry remote is out of the vehicle. If the buzzer continues even after the remote is put back inside, place it within its operational range.

■ When the power mode is in ON

If the smart entry remote is taken out of the vehicle, and the driver's door is closed, warning buzzers sound from both inside and outside the vehicle. A warning message on the driver information interface notifies the driver inside that the remote is out.

■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

If the smart entry remote is taken out of the vehicle, and all the doors are closed, a warning buzzer sounds from outside the vehicle.

Smart Entry Remote Reminder

When the smart entry remote is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

If the smart entry remote is taken out of the vehicle after the engine has been started, you can no longer change the **ENGINE START/STOP** button mode or restart the engine. Always make sure if the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Removing the smart entry remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

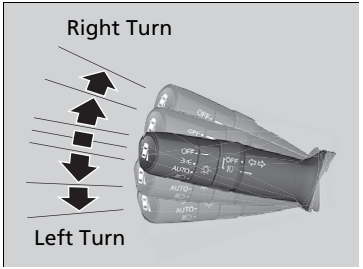
Do not put the smart entry remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to go off. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also go off even if the remote is within the system's operational range.

Ignition Switch and Power Mode Comparison

Ignition Switch Position	LOCK (0) (with/without the key) 	ACCESSORY (I) 	ON (II) 	START (III) 
Without Smart Entry System	• Engine is turned off and power is shut down. • The steering wheel is locked*1. • No electrical components can be used.	• Engine is turned off. • Some electrical components such as the audio system and the accessory power socket can be operated.	• Normal key position while driving. • All electrical components can be used.	• Use this position to start the engine. • The ignition switch returns to the ON (II) position when you release the key.
Power Mode	VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) 	ACCESSORY 	ON  Button is: Blinking On	START 
With Smart Entry System and **ENGINE START/STOP** Button	Button-Off • Engine is turned off and power is shut down. • The steering wheel is locked*1. • No electrical components can be used.	Button-Blinking • Engine is turned off. • Some electrical components such as the audio system and the accessory power socket can be operated.	Button-Blinking (engine is turned off) On (engine is running) • All electrical components can be used.	Button-On • The mode automatically returns to ON after the engine starts.

*1:Canadian models

Turn Signals



The turn signals can be used when the ignition switch is in ON II*1.

■ **One-touch turn signal**

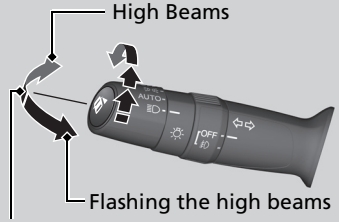
When you lightly push up or down and release the turn signal lever, the exterior turn signals and turn signal indicator blink three times.

This feature can be used when signaling for a lane change.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Light Switches

■ Manual Operation



Turns on parking, side marker, tail, and rear license plate lights

Turns on headlights, parking, side marker, tail, and rear license plate lights

Rotating the light switch turns the lights on and off, regardless of the power mode setting or position of the ignition switch.

■ High beams

Push the lever forward until you hear a click.

■ Low beams

When in high beams, pull the lever back to return to low beams.

■ Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back, and release it.

Light Switches

Models without smart entry system

If you remove the key from the ignition switch with the lights on, a light on reminder chime sounds when you open the driver's door.

Models with smart entry system

If you leave the power mode in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

All models

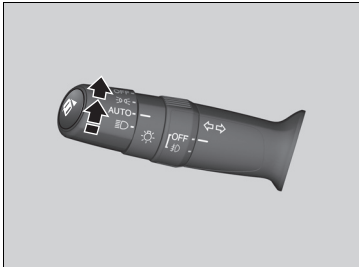
When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

Indicators P. 80

Do not leave the lights on when the engine is off because it will cause the battery to discharge.

Continued

■ Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)*



Automatic lighting control can be used when the power mode is in ON.

When you turn the light switch to **AUTO**, the headlights and other exterior lights will switch on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

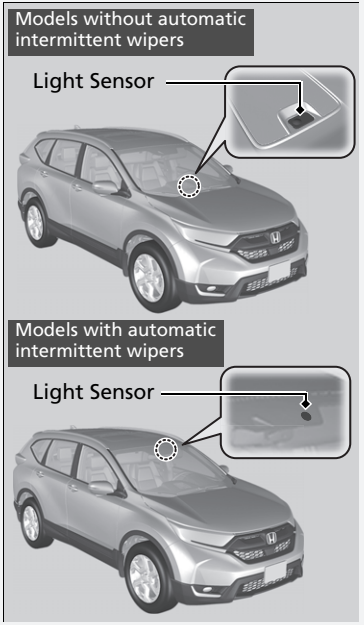
▶ You can change the auto light sensitivity setting.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 351

Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)*

We recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night, in a dense fog, or in dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor with anything; otherwise, the automatic lighting system may not work properly.



 * Not available on all models

■ Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), take the remote with you, and close the driver's door.

▶ You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 351

If you turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0*1 with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a lights on reminder chime.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

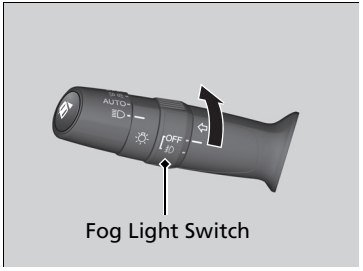
Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)*

Adjust the auto light sensitivity as follows:

Setting	The exterior lights come on when the ambient light is at
Max	 Bright / Dark
High	
Mid	
Low	
Min	

* Not available on all models

Fog Lights*



Fog Light Switch

Can be used when the low beam headlights are on.

Rotate the switch up from the **OFF** position to the position.

Fog Lights*

When the fog lights are on, the indicator in the instrument panel will be on.
They go off when the headlights turn off, or when the daytime running lights are on.

➔ **Daytime Running Lights** P. 184

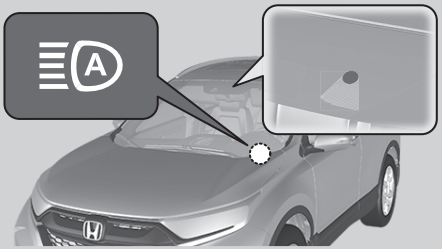
 * Not available on all models

Auto High-Beam System*

Using a camera mounted to the inside of the windshield, this system detects light sources ahead of the vehicle. Depending on the light source, the system automatically switches the headlights to high beam for optimal visibility at night.

The system operates when:

- The headlight switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The low beams are on and the system recognizes that you are driving at night.
- The vehicle speed is above 25 mph (40 km/h).

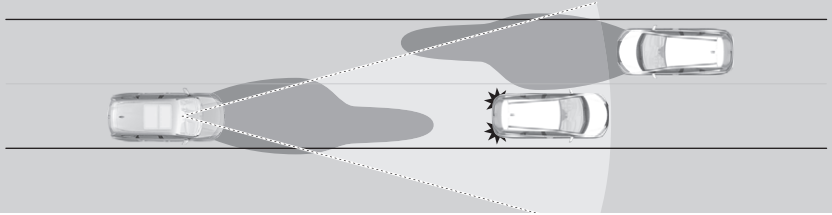


How it works:

When the camera detects lights coming from a preceding or oncoming vehicle, the headlights remain in low beam.

When the camera detects no lights coming from a preceding or oncoming vehicle, the headlights change to high beam.

The view angle or distance that the camera can detect lights ahead differs depending on conditions, such as the brightness of the lights and the weather.



Auto High-Beam System*

The auto high-beam system determines when to change the headlight beams by responding to the brightness of the lights ahead of your vehicle. In the following cases, the system may not respond to the lights properly:

- The brightness of the lights from the preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windshield frost, etc.).
- Other light sources, such as streetlights and electric billboards are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.

If you find the timing of beam changes inconvenient for driving, change the headlight beams manually.

If you do not want the system to be activated at any time when the headlight switch is in **AUTO**, consult a dealer.

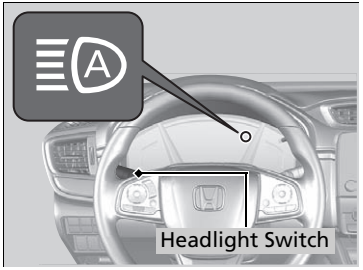
If you do not want the system to be activated at any time when the headlight switch is in **AUTO**, consult a dealer or disable the system.

Disabling or Re-enabling the System P. 183

* Not available on all models

Continued

To Operate the System



To activate the system, turn the headlight switch to **AUTO** and then set the headlights to low beam. The auto high-beam indicator will come on.

Light Switches P. 177

The high beams remain on unless:

- You have been driving below 15 mph (24 km/h) for an extended amount of time.
- The speed of the vehicle drops below 6 mph (10 km/h).
- The windshield wipers have been running at a high speed for more than a few seconds.
- You enter a well lit location.

The high beams come back on once the condition that caused them to turn off no longer exists.

If needed, you can temporarily turn the high-beams off manually. Turn on the high-beams by pushing the lever forward until you hear a click, or flash the high beams once by pulling the lever towards you. To turn the high beams back on, repeat one of the procedures.

To Operate the System

For the auto high-beam system to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windshield around the camera clean. When cleaning the windshield, be careful not to apply the windshield cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker or film in the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

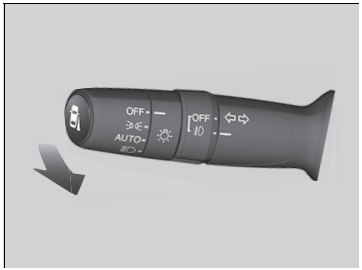
If the message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use defroster mode with the air flow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windshield temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windshield. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windshield and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Disabling or Re-enabling the System



Disable or re-enable the system when the vehicle is parked and the power mode is in ON and the light switch is in the **AUTO** position.

Disabling the system: Pull the light switch lever towards you and hold it for at least 40 seconds.

Re-enabling the system: Pull the light switch lever towards you and hold it for at least 30 seconds.

Disabling or Re-enabling the System

The auto high-beam system will remain in the selected disabled or re-enabled setting each time you start the engine.

Daytime Running Lights

The parking/daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

- The ignition switch is in ON (II)*1.
- The headlight switch is **AUTO** or **OFF** or ≡D0≡.
- The parking brake is released.

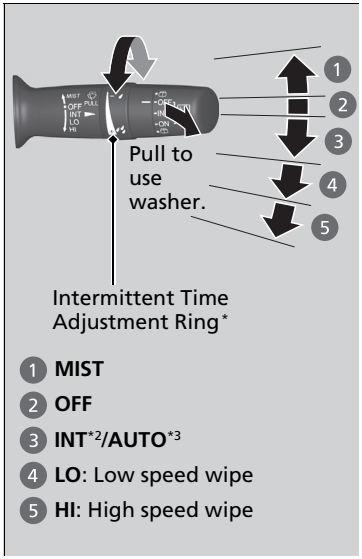
The lights remain on even if you set the parking brake. Turning off the ignition switch or setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF will turn off the daytime running lights.

The daytime running lights are off once the headlight switch is turned on, or when the headlight switch is in **AUTO** and it is getting darker outside.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Wipers and Washers

■ Windshield Wipers/Washers



1. **MIST**
2. **OFF**
3. **INT*2/AUTO*3**
4. **LO**: Low speed wipe
5. **HI**: High speed wipe

The windshield wipers and washers can be used when the ignition switch is in ON II*1.

■ MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT*2/AUTO*3, LO, HI)

Move the lever up or down to change the wiper settings.

■ Adjusting wiper operation*

Turn the adjustment ring to adjust the wiper operation.



Lower speed, fewer sweeps

Higher speed, more sweeps

■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever toward you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windshield, then stop.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Models with manual intermittent operation

*3: Models with automatic intermittent operation

* Not available on all models

Continued

Wipers and Washers

NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windshield is dry. The windshield will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

NOTICE

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windshield.
Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the defogger to warm the windshield, then turn the wipers on.

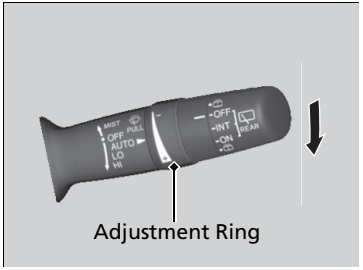
Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

Models with intermittent time adjustment ring

If the vehicle speeds up while the wipers are operating intermittently, the length of the wipe interval shortens.
When the vehicle speeds up, the wiper operation's shortest delay setting ( ) and the **LO** setting become the same.

If the wiper stops operating due to an obstacle such as the build-up of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place. Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, and turn the ignition switch to ACCESSORY I or LOCK 0*1, then remove the obstacle.

■ Automatic Intermittent Wipers*



When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windshield wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stops in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

■ AUTO sensitivity adjustment

When the wiper function is set to **AUTO**, you can adjust the sensitivity of the rain fall sensor (using the adjustment ring) so that wipers will operate in accordance with your preference.

Sensor sensitivity



Low Sensitivity

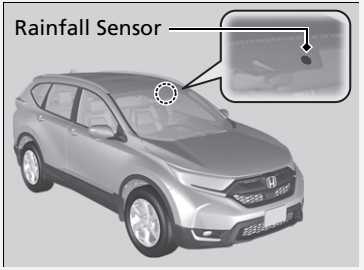
High Sensitivity

Wipers and Washers

The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes, once the circuit has returned to normal.

Automatic Intermittent Wipers*

The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.

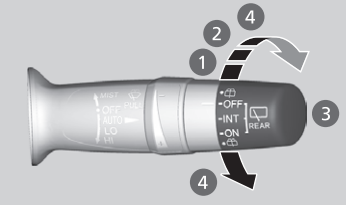


AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situation in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windshield
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

 * Not available on all models

■ Rear Wiper/Washer



1. **INT**: Intermittent
2. **ON**: Continuous wipe
3. **OFF**
4. Washer

The rear wiper and washer can be used when the ignition switch is in ON II*1.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT, ON)

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

■ Washer ( )

Sprays while you rotate the switch to this position.
Hold it to activate the wiper and to spray the washer. Once released, it stops operating after a few more sweeps.

■ Operating in reverse

When you shift the transmission to R with the windshield wipers activated, the rear wiper operates automatically as follows even if its switch is off.

Front Wiper Position	Rear Wiper Operation
INT (Intermittent)	Intermittent
LO (Low speed wipe) **HI** (High speed wipe)	Continuous

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Brightness Control



With the parking lights are turned on and the ignition switch is in ON II*1, you can use the brightness control knob to adjust instrument panel brightness.
Brighten: Turn the knob to the right.
Dim: Turn the knob to the left.

You will hear a beeper when the brightness reaches minimum or maximum. Several seconds after adjusting the brightness, you will be returned to the previous screen.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Brightness Control

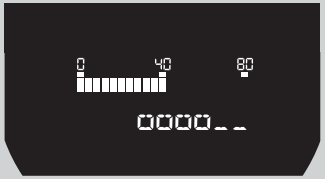
Instrument panel brightness differs between when the exterior lights are on and when they are off. The instrument panel dims to reduce glare when the lights are on.

Turn the knob to the right until the brightness display is up to max. This cancels the reduced instrument panel brightness when the exterior lights are on.

The brightness can be set differently for when the exterior lights are on, and when they are off.

To cancels the reduced instrument panel brightness when the exterior lights are on, turn the knob to the right until the brightness display is up to max, the beeper sounds.

Information display



Driver information interface



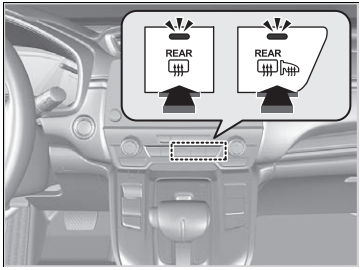
■ Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the information display while you are adjusting it.

Defogger/Heated Door Mirror*

■ Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror* Button

Press the rear defogger and heated door mirror button to defog the rear window and mirrors when the ignition switch is in ON II*1.



Models without heated door mirror

The rear defogger automatically switches off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 32°F (0°C) or below, it does not automatically switch off.

Models with heated door mirror

The rear defogger and heated door mirror automatically switches off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 32°F (0°C) or below, it does not automatically switch off.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Defogger/Heated Door Mirror*

NOTICE

When cleaning the inside of the rear window, be careful not to damage the heating wires.
It is critical to wipe the window from side to side along the defogger heating wires.

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been defogged or deiced. Also, do not use the system for a long period when the engine is idling. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

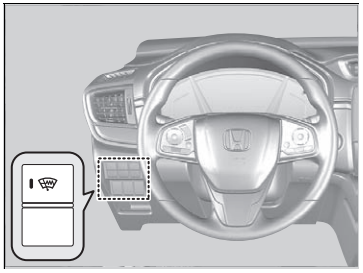
Models with heated door mirror

When the outside temperature is below 41°F (5°C), the heated door mirror may activate automatically for 10 minutes when you set the power mode to ON.

* Not available on all models

Canadian models

■ Heated Windshield Button



Press the heated windshield button to deice the windshield when the power mode is in ON.

Heated Windshield Button

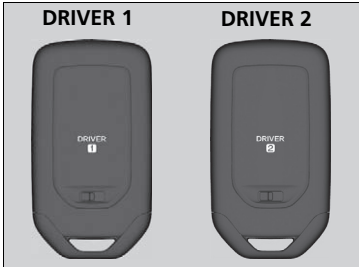
This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been defogged or deiced. Also, do not use the system for a long period when the engine is idling. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

Driving Position Memory System*

You can store two driver's seat positions (except for power lumbar) with the driving position memory system.

When you unlock and open the driver's door with a remote transmitter or the smart entry system, the seat adjusts automatically to one of the two preset positions.

- **DRIVER 1** transmitter is linked to memory button 1.
- **DRIVER 2** transmitter is linked to memory button 2.



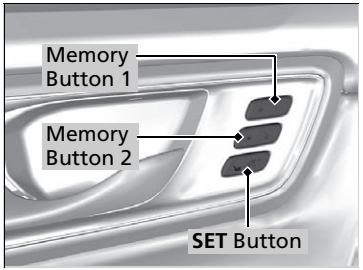
Driving Position Memory System*

Using the audio/information screen, you can disable the automatic seat adjustment function.

Customized Features P. 351

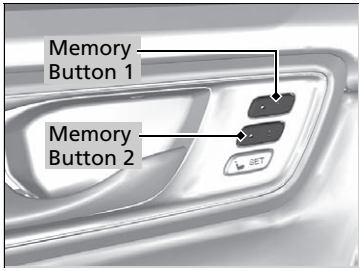
 * Not available on all models

Storing a Position in Memory



1. Set the power mode to ON. Adjust the driver's seat to the desired position.
2. Press the **SET** button.
   ▶ You will hear a beep, and the memory button indicator light will blink.
3. Press and hold memory button 1 or 2 within five seconds of pressing the **SET** button.
   ▶ Once the seat position has been memorized, the indicator light on the button you pressed stays on.

Recalling the Stored Position



1. Move the shift lever to P.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Press a memory button (1 or 2).
   ▶ You will hear a beep, and the indicator light will blink.

The seat will automatically move to the memorized position. When it has finished moving, you will hear a beeper, and the indicator light stays on.

Storing a Position in Memory

After you press the **SET** button, the storing operation will be canceled when:

- You do not press the memory button within five seconds.
- You readjust the seat position before the double-beep.
- You set the power mode to any position except ON.

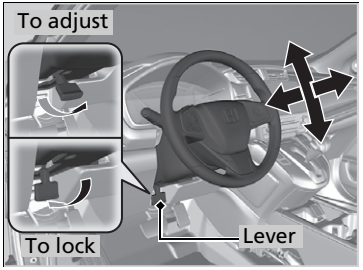
Recalling the Stored Position

The seat will stop moving if you:

- Press the **SET** button, or a memory button (1 or 2).
- Adjust the seat position.
- Shift into any position except P.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



1. Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up.
▶ The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
▶ Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Push the steering wheel adjustment lever down to lock the steering wheel in position.
▶ After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

⚠WARNING

Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

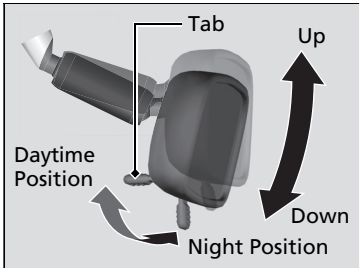
Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

Make any steering wheel adjustments before you start driving.

Interior Rearview Mirror

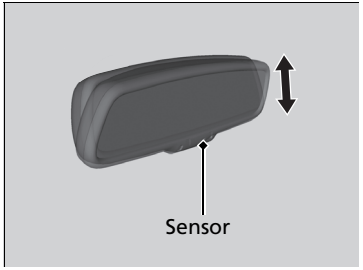
Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

■ Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions*



Flip the tab to switch the position.
The night position will help reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

■ Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*



When driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you. This feature is always active.

Adjusting the Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

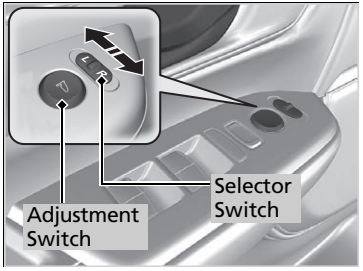
Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.
➡ **Front Seats** P. 197

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*

The auto dimming function cancels when the shift position is in R.

* Not available on all models

Power Door Mirrors



You can adjust the door mirrors when the ignition switch is in ON II*1.

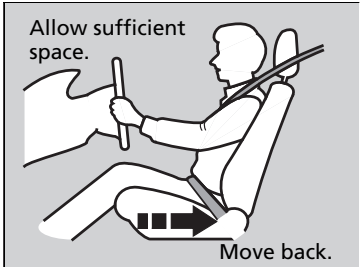
■ **Mirror position adjustment**

L/R selector switch: Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the center position.

Mirror position adjustment switch: Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Front Seats



Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

Adjusting the Seats

⚠WARNING

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

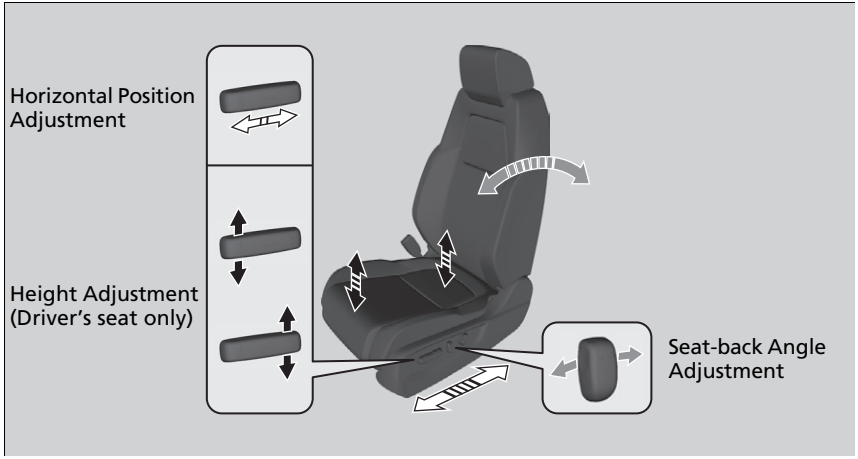
Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that drivers allow at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the center of the steering wheel and the chest.

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

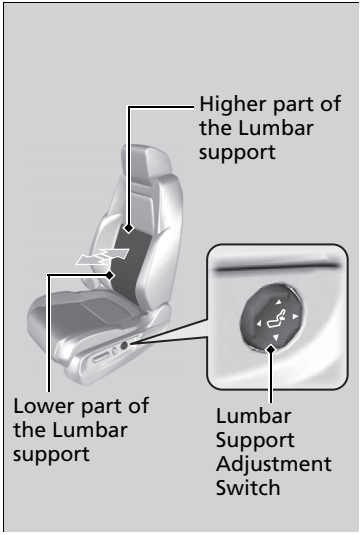
Adjusting the Seat Positions

■ Adjusting the front power seat*



* Not available on all models

Continued



■ **Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch***

Press the top: To increase the higher part of the lumbar support.

Press the bottom: To increase the lower part of the lumbar support. (The higher part support is decreased.)

Press the front: To increase the entire lumbar support.

Press the rear: To decrease the entire lumbar support.

 * Not available on all models

■ Adjusting the front manual seat(s)*



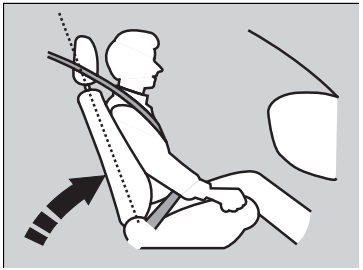
Adjusting the front manual seat(s)*

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the center of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

Adjusting the Seat-Backs

⚠WARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

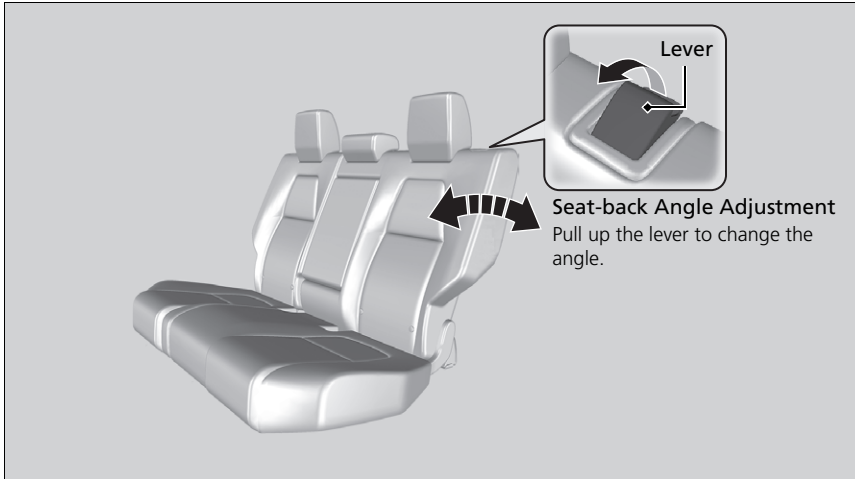
Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

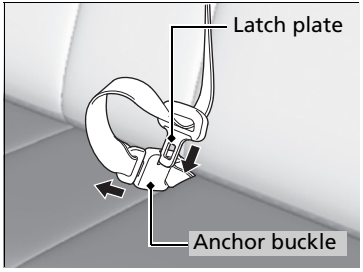
If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

Rear Seats

Adjusting the Seat Positions



Folding Down the Rear Seats



1. Store the center seat belt first. Insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle.
2. Retract the seat belt into the holder on the ceiling.
   Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor P. 46
3. Lower the rear seat head restraint to its lowest position. Put the armrest back into the seat-back.

Continued

Rear Seats

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

Folding Down the Rear Seats

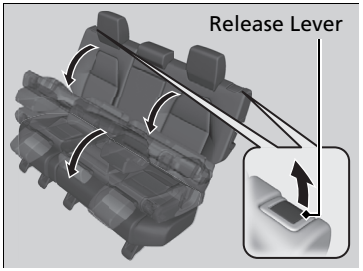
The rear seat-backs can be folded down to accommodate bulkier items in the cargo area.

Remove any items from the rear seat cushion and floor before you fold down the rear seat.

Never drive with the seat-back folded down and the tailgate open.
Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 76

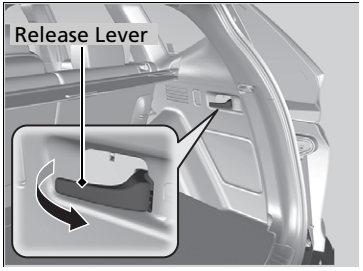
When returning the seat-back to its original position, push it firmly back. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back.

Make sure all items in the cargo area or items extending through the opening into the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.



From the rear seat side

4. Pull the release lever and fold down the seat.



From the cargo area side

4. Pull the release lever and fold down the seat.

Folding Down the Rear Seats

Make sure that the folded seat-back does not press against the front passenger seat, as this can cause the weight sensors in the front passenger seat to work improperly.

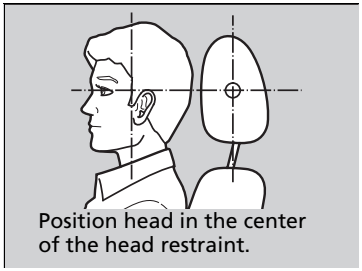
Passenger Airbag Off Indicator P. 61

Make sure the seat-back, head restraints and seat cushion are securely latched back into place before driving.

Head Restraints

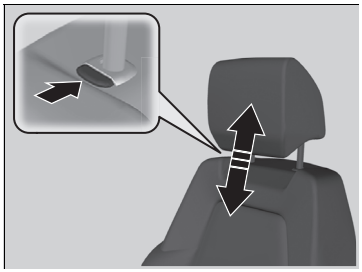
Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

Adjusting the Front Head Restraints



Position head in the center of the head restraint.

Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the center of the back of the occupant's head rests against the center of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the center height of the restraint.



To raise the head restraint: Pull it upward.
To lower the head restraint: Push it down while pressing the release button.

Adjusting the Front Head Restraints

⚠WARNING

Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

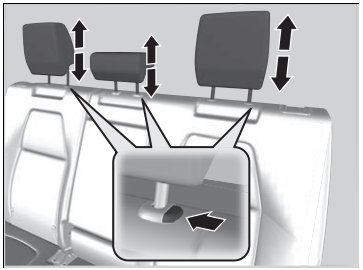
Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

Continued

■ Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Position



A passenger sitting in the rear seat should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

To raise the head restraint:
Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint:
Push it down while pressing the release button.

■ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

To remove a head restraint:
Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then push the release button, and pull the restraint up and out.

To reinstall a head restraint:
Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

⚠WARNING

Failure to reinstall, or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

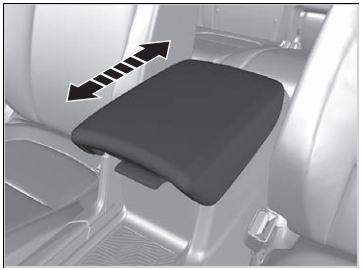
⚠WARNING

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

Armrest

■ Using the Front Seat Armrest

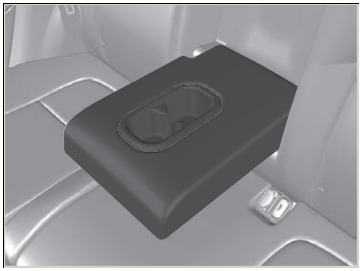


The console lid can be used as an armrest.

To adjust:

Slide the armrest to a desired position.

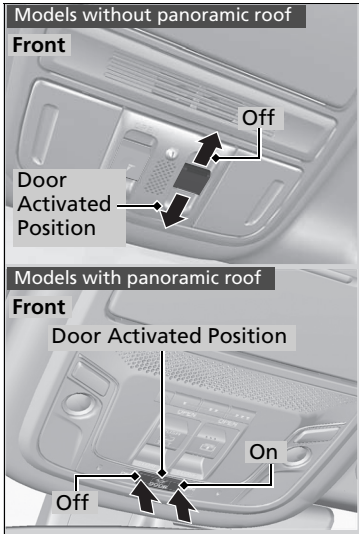
■ Using the Rear Seat Armrest



Pull down the armrest in the center seat-back.

Interior Lights

Interior Light Switches



■ ON

The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

■ Door activated

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- When any doors are opened.
- You unlock the driver's door.

Models without smart entry system

- You remove the key from the ignition switch.

Models with smart entry system

- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

■ OFF

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and go off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed. The lights go off after 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.

Models without smart entry system

- When you remove the key from the ignition switch but do not open a door.

Models with smart entry system

- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) but do not open a door.

Models with Display Audio

You can change the interior lights dimming time.
Customized Features P. 351

The interior lights go off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.

Models without smart entry system

- When you close the driver's door with the key in the ignition switch.

Models with smart entry system

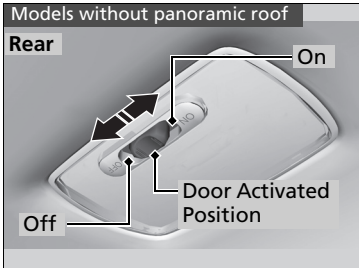
- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.
- When you set the power mode to ON.

To avoid draining the battery, do not leave the interior light on for an extended length of time when the engine or power system is off.

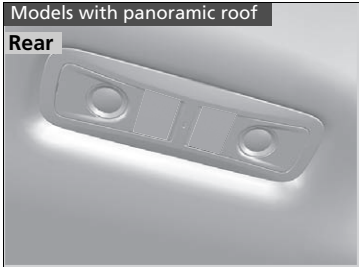
If you leave any doors open in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) mode, or without the key in the ignition switch, the interior lights go off after about 15 minutes.

Continued

Models without panoramic roof

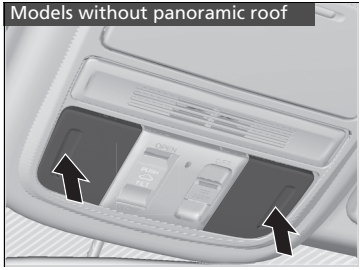


Models with panoramic roof



Map Lights

Models without panoramic roof



Front

Models without panoramic roof

The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the lens.

Models with panoramic roof



Models with panoramic roof

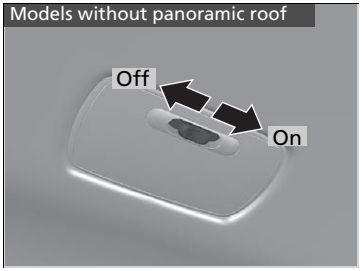
The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the button.

Map Lights

Models with panoramic roof

When the interior light switch is in the door activated position and a door is opened or interior light switch is in the **ON** position, the rear map light will not go off when you press the button.

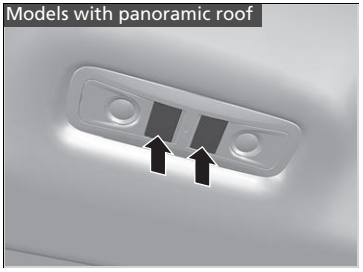
Continued



■ **Rear**

Models without panoramic roof

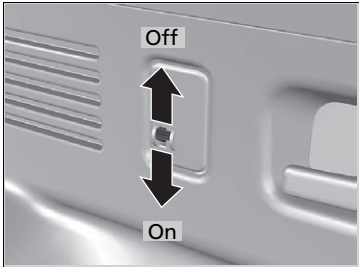
The map lights can be turned on and off by sliding the switch.



Models with panoramic roof

The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the button.

■ Cargo Area Lights



■ **ON**

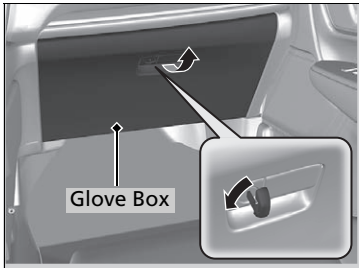
The light comes on when you open the tailgate, and goes off when closed.

■ **OFF**

The light stays off with or without opening the tailgate.

Interior Convenience Items

Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box. You can lock the glove box with the master key or the built-in key.

Glove Box

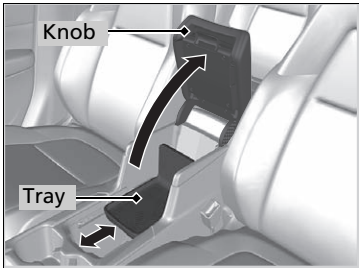
⚠WARNING

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

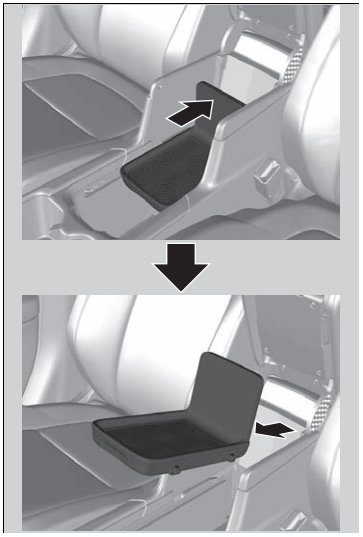
Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

Continued

■ Center Console Box



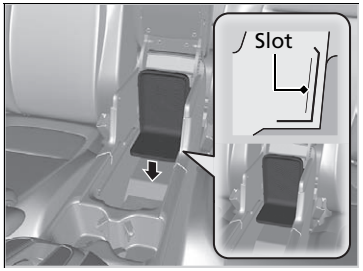
To open, pull the knob. You can change the position of the tray by sliding it forward or back.



■ Removing the tray

1. Slide the tray back.

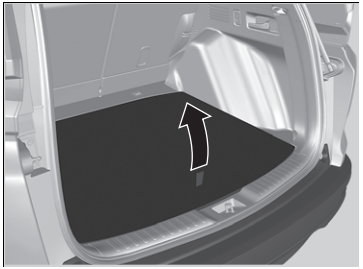
2. Lift the edge of the tray up slightly, then pull it out.



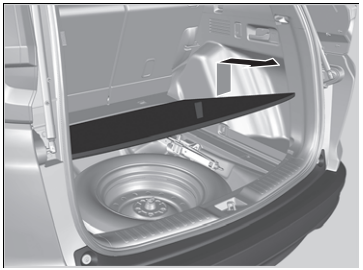
Storing the tray:
Line the tray up with the slots located at the rear section of the console box, and then push it down all the way until it is in the locked position.

Continued

■ Under-floor Storage Area



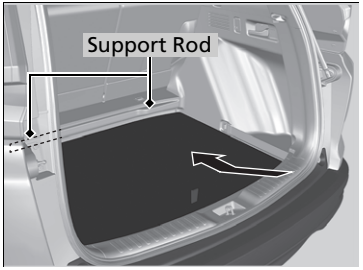
Pull the strap to open the cargo floor lid.



■ Storing items on the lid at the bottom position

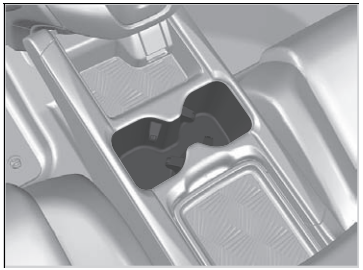
This is convenient when storing a tall item.

1. Pull the strap upwards to lift the lid.
2. Pull the lid towards you until it disengages from the support rods.



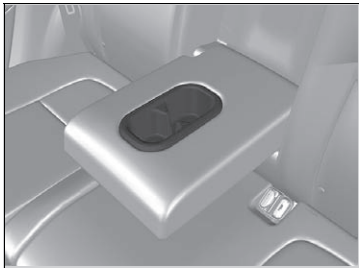
3. Push the far end of the lid down to the bottom under the support rod, then lower the other end.

■ Beverage Holders



■ Front seat beverage holders

Are located in the console between the front seats.



■ Rear seat beverage holders

Fold the armrest down to use the rear seat beverage holders.

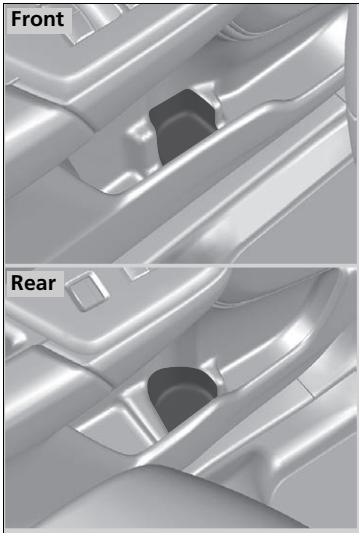
Beverage Holders

NOTICE

Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.

Continued

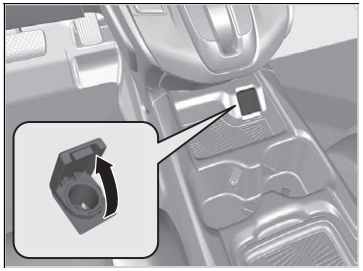


■ **Door side beverage holders**

Are located on the both of front and rear door side pockets.

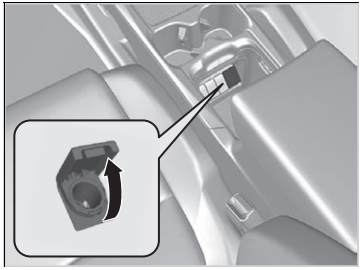
■ Accessory Power Sockets

The accessory power sockets can be used when the ignition switch is in ACCESSORY I or ON II*1.



■ Accessory power socket on the console panel

Open the cover to use it.



■ Accessory power socket in the console compartment

Open the console lid and the cover to use it.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Continued

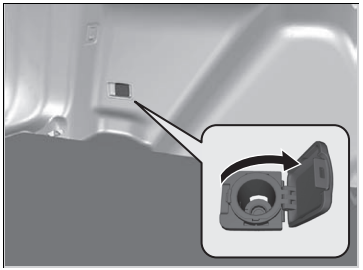
Accessory Power Sockets

NOTICE

Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element.
This can overheat the power socket.

The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts or less (15 amps).

To prevent battery drain, only use the power socket with the engine running.

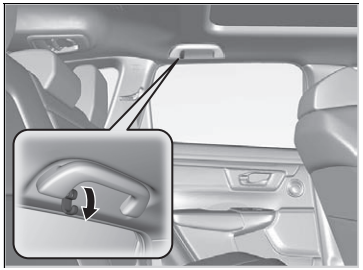


■ **Accessory power socket (cargo area)**[*1]

Open the cover to use it.

*1: Canadian models only, if equipped

Coat Hook

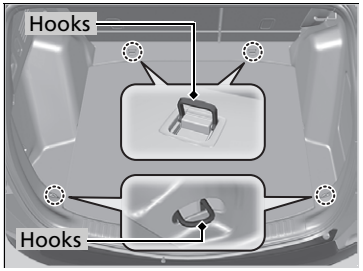


There is a coat hook on the rear left grab handle. Pull it down to use it.

Coat Hook

The coat hook is not designed for large or heavy items.

Tie-down Anchors



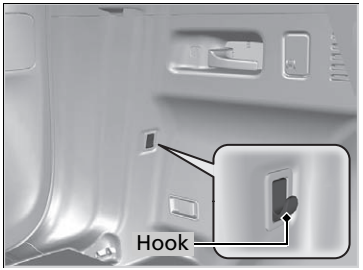
The tie-down anchors on the cargo area floor can be used to install a net for securing items.

Tie-down Anchors

Do not let anyone access items in the cargo area while driving. Loose items can cause injury if you have to brake hard.

Continued

■ Cargo Hooks



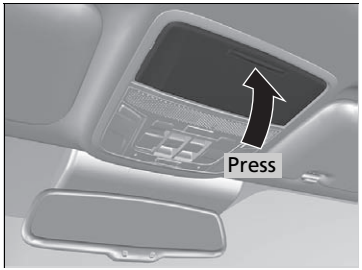
The cargo hooks on the driver's side of the cargo area can be used to hang a light items.

Cargo Hooks

NOTICE

Do not hang a large object or an object that weighs more than 6 lbs (3 kg) on the side cargo hooks. Hanging heavy or large objects may damage the hooks.

■ Sunglasses Holder



To open the sunglasses holder, press and release the indent. To close, press it again until it latches.

You can store eyeglasses and other small items in this holder.



■ Conversation mirror

The sunglasses holder comes with a mirror. Open the sunglasses holder fully, then push it back to the first detent.

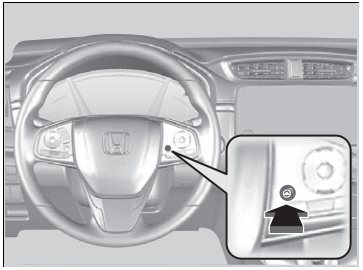
You can use the mirror to view the rear seats.

Sunglasses Holder

Keep the holder closed while driving except when accessing stored items.

Continued

Heated Steering Wheel*1



The power mode must be in ON to use the heated steering wheel.

Press the button on the right side of the steering wheel.

When a comfortable temperature is reached, press the button again to turn it off.

The heated steering wheel is turned off every time you start the engine, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

Heated Steering Wheel*1

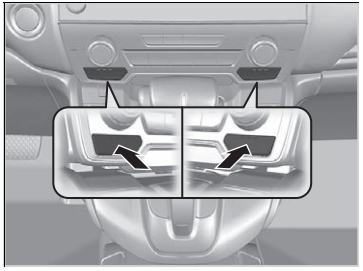
Do not use the heated steering wheel continuously when the engine is off. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

*1: Canadian models only, if equipped

Front Seat Heaters*



The power mode is in ON to use the seat heaters. The HI setting heats the seats faster than the LO setting.



Press the seat heater button:
Once - The HI setting (three indicators on)
Twice - The MID setting (two indicators on)
Three times - The LO setting (one indicator on)
Four times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

When the power mode is turn on after it is turned off, the previous setting of seat heaters is maintained.

Front Seat Heaters*

⚠WARNING

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

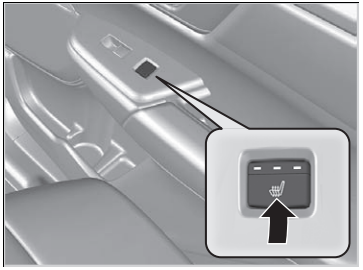
Do not use the seat heaters even in LO when the engine is off. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

After a certain period of time, the strength setting for the seat heater as well as that for the seat ventilation system will automatically be reduced by one level at a time until the seat heater or ventilation system shuts off. The elapsed time varies according to the interior environment.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Rear Seat Heaters*1



There is no heater in the rear center seating position.
Press the seat heater button:
Once - The HI setting (three indicators on)
Twice - The MID setting (two indicators on)
Three times - The LO setting (one indicator on)
Four times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

The rear seat heaters is turned off every time you start the engine, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

Rear Seat Heaters*1

⚠WARNING

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

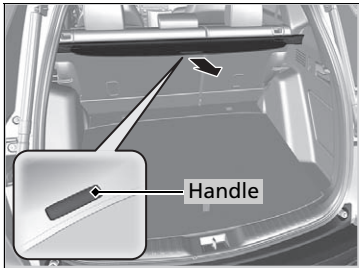
Do not use the seat heaters even in LO when the engine is off. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

The rear seat heater is turned off every time you start the engine, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

When the power mode is turned on after it is turned off, the previous setting of front seat heaters is maintained.

*1: Canadian models only, if equipped

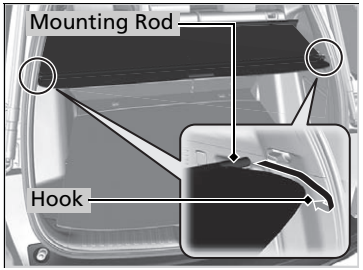
Rear Cargo Cover*



The rear cargo cover can be used to conceal items in the cargo area and protect them from direct sunlight.

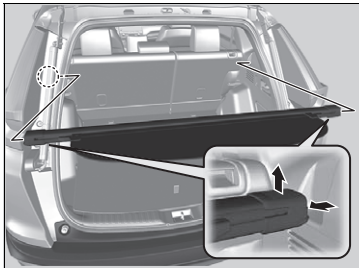
■ To extend:

Slightly lift up on the handle at the center edge of the cover to unhook each end, then pull the cover rearward and clip the mounting rods in the hooks at both sides of the tailgate opening.



■ To retract:

Slip the rods out of the hooks, then slowly roll it back until it is completely retracted.



■ To remove:

Push either end of the housing inward, then lift it out of its position.

Rear Cargo Cover*

Do not let anyone access items in the cargo area while driving. Loose items can cause injury if you have to brake hard.

Do not stack objects higher than the top of the seat in the cargo area. They could block your view and be thrown about the vehicle during a sudden stop.

To prevent rear cargo cover damage:
- Do not place items on the rear cargo cover.
- Do not put weight on the rear cargo cover.

Be sure that each mounting rod sets in its respective retention groove when you retract the rear cargo cover. If they are not set in the grooves, the rods may rattle as they contact the surrounding surfaces.

* Not available on all models

Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.

Models without SYNC button



Models with SYNC button





Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.

Models without SYNC button

2. Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control dial.

Models with SYNC button

2. Adjust the interior temperature using the driver's side or passenger's side control dial.

3. Press the ON/OFF (on/off) button to cancel.

Using Automatic Climate Control

Press the **CLIMATE** button to display **A/C**, **MODE**, fan control information on the audio/information screen to operate manually. Select icon to turn on or off **A/C**, change the vent mode, or change the fan speed.

If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.

The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that were pressed will be controlled automatically.

To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on AUTO, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.

Pressing the ON/OFF button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.

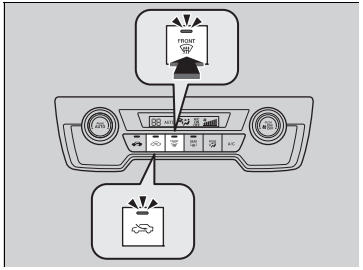
■ **Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes**

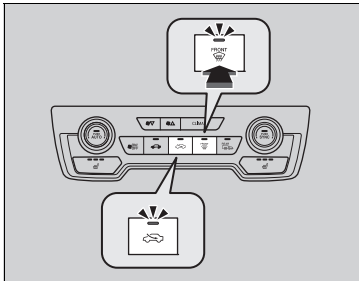
Press the (recirculation) or (fresh air) button to switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator on): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

■ Defrosting the Windshield and Windows





Pressing the FRONT (windshield defroster) button turns the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

Press the FRONT button again to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

Defrosting the Windshield and Windows

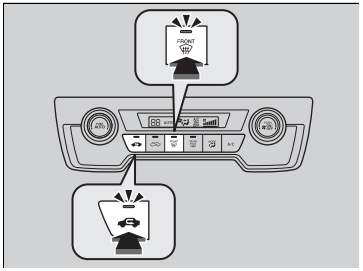
For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

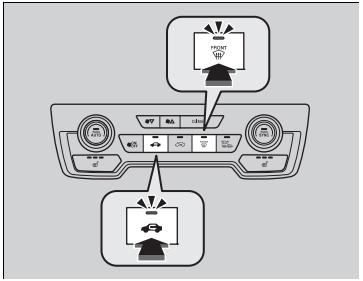
Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.
When cold air hits the windshield, the outside of the windshield may fog up.

If the side windows fog up, adjust the vents so that the air hits the side windows.

Continued

■ To rapidly defrost the windows



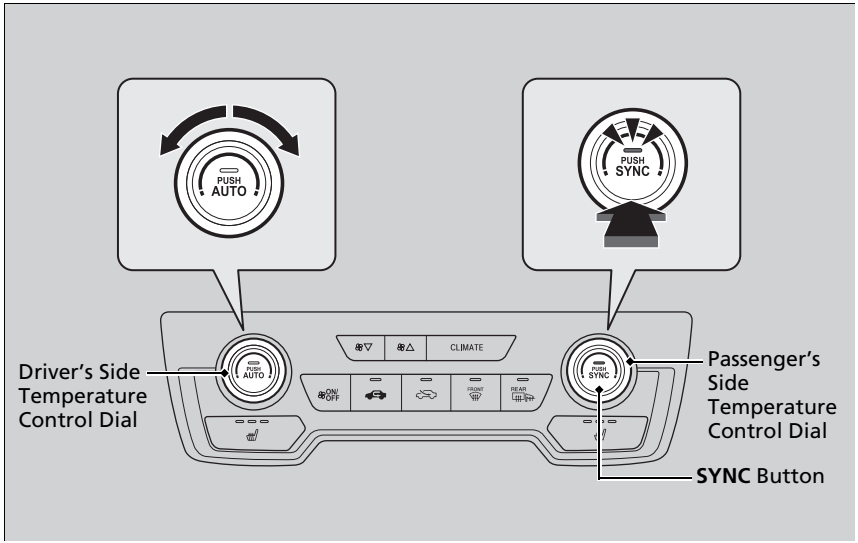


1. Press the FRONT button.
2. Press the button.

To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

Synchronization Mode*



You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver's side and the passenger's side in synchronization mode.

1. Press the **SYNC** button.

▶ The system switches to synchronization mode.

2. Adjust the temperature using the driver's side temperature control dial.

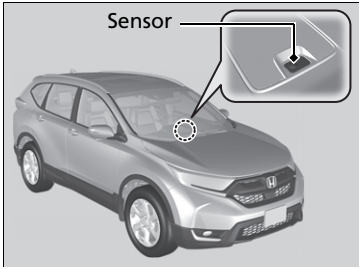
Press the **SYNC** button to return to dual mode.

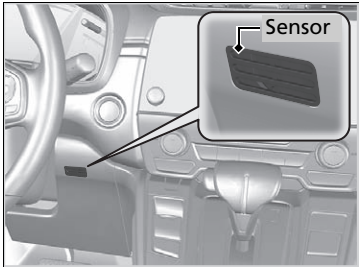
Synchronization Mode*

When the system is in dual mode, the driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature can be set separately.

* Not available on all models

Automatic Climate Control Sensors





The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.

Features

This chapter describes how to operate technology features.

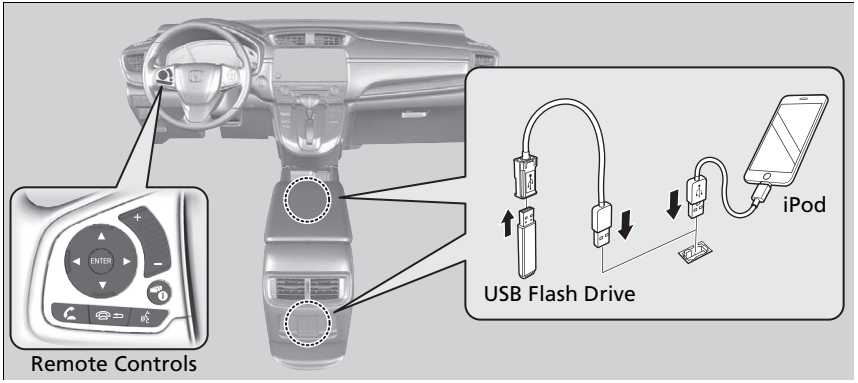
Audio System
About Your Audio System 232
USB Port(s) 233
Audio System Theft Protection 234
Audio Remote Controls 235
Models with color audio system
Audio System Basic Operation
Audio/Information Screen 240
Adjusting the Sound 244
Display Setup 245
Playing AM/FM Radio 246
Playing an iPod 248
Playing Pandora® 251
Playing a USB Flash Drive 253
Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio 256
Siri® Eyes Free 259
Models with Display Audio
Audio System Basic Operation
Audio/Information Screen 261
Adjusting the Sound 282
Display Setup 283
Voice Control Operation 285
Playing AM/FM Radio 289
Playing SiriusXM® Radio* 293
Playing an iPod 300
Song By Voice™ (SBV) 303
Playing Pandora®* 307
Playing a USB Flash Drive 309
Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio 312
HondaLink® 314
Wi-Fi Connection 319
Siri® Eyes Free 321
Apple CarPlay™ 322
Android Auto™ 325
Audio Error Messages 329
General Information on the Audio System 334
Customized Features 351
HomeLink® Universal Transceiver* .. 384
***Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®** 387, 410
Compass* 444

* Not available on all models

About Your Audio System

The audio system features AM/FM radio and SiriusXM® Radio service*. It can also play USB flash drives, and iPod, iPhone and *Bluetooth*® devices.

You can operate the audio system from the buttons and switches on the panel, the remote controls on the steering wheel, or the icons on the touchscreen interface*.



About Your Audio System

SiriusXM® Radio is available on a subscription basis only. For more information on SiriusXM® Radio*, contact a dealer.

General Information on the Audio System
P. 334

SiriusXM® Radio is available in the United States and Canada, except Hawaii, Alaska, and Puerto Rico.

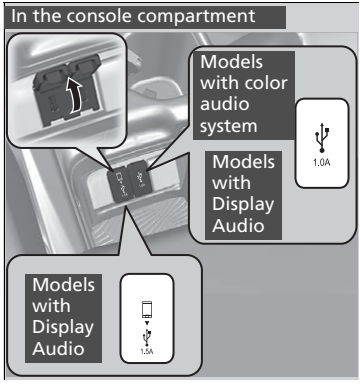
SiriusXM® is a registered trademark of SiriusXM Radio, Inc.

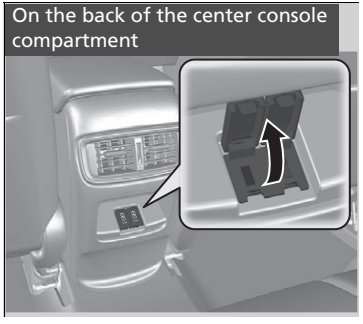
iPod, iPhone and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc.

State or local laws may prohibit the operation of handheld electronic devices while operating a vehicle.

 * Not available on all models

USB Port(s)





Install the iPod USB connector or the USB flash drive to the USB port.

▶ The USB port (1.0A) is for playing audio files on a USB flash drive, connecting a cellular phone, and charging devices.

Models with Display Audio

▶ The USB port (1.5A) is for charging devices, playing audio files and connecting compatible phones with Apple CarPlay™ or Android Auto™.

■ On the back of the center console compartment*

The USB ports (2.5A) are only for charging devices.

USB Port(s)

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend using an extension cable with the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend keeping your data backed up before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

If the audio system does not recognize the iPod, try reconnecting it a few times or reboot the device. To reboot, follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the iPod or visit *www.apple.com/ipod*.

The USB port can supply up to 1.0A/1.5A/2.5A of power. It does not output 1.0A/1.5A/2.5A unless the device requests.
For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.
Turn the ignition switch to ACCESSORY [I] or ON [II]*1 first.

USB Port (2.5A)

This port is for battery charge only. You cannot play music even if you have connected a music player to it.

Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise in the radio you are listening to.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Audio System Theft Protection

The audio system is disabled when it is disconnected from the power source, such as when the battery is disconnected or goes dead. In certain conditions, the system may display a code entry screen. If this occurs, reactivate the audio system.

■ Reactivating the audio system

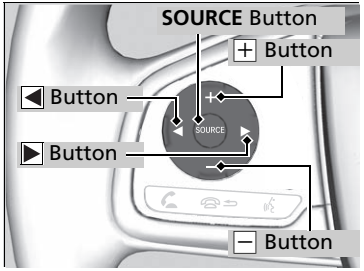
1. Turn the ignition switch to ON (II)*1.
2. Turn on the audio system.
3. Press and hold the audio system power button for more than two seconds.
▶ The audio system is reactivated when the audio control unit establishes a connection with the vehicle control unit. If the control unit fails to recognize the audio unit, you must go to a dealer and have the audio unit checked.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Audio Remote Controls

Models with color audio system

Allow you to operate the audio system while driving.



SOURCE Button

Cycles through the audio modes as follows:
FM1→FM2→AM→USB/iPod→Pandora®→*Bluetooth*® Audio

+ – (Volume) Buttons

Press +: To increase the volume.
Press –: To decrease the volume.

◀ ▶ Buttons

- When listening to the radio
  Press ▶: To select the next preset radio station.
  Press ◀: To select the previous preset radio station.
  Press and hold ▶: To select the next station with strong reception.
  Press and hold ◀: To select the previous station with strong reception.
- When listening to an iPod, USB flash drive, or *Bluetooth*® Audio
  Press ▶: To skip to the next song.
  Press ◀: To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- When listening to a USB flash drive, or *Bluetooth*® Audio*
  Press and hold ▶: To skip to the next folder.
  Press and hold ◀: To go back to the previous folder.
- When listening to Pandora®
  Press ▶: To skip to the next track.
  Press and hold ▶: To select the next station.
  Press and hold ◀: To select the previous station.

Audio Remote Controls

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

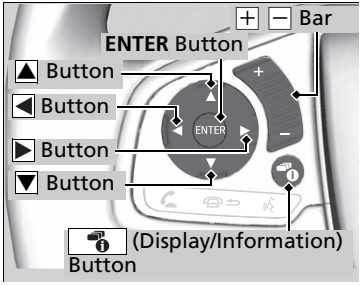
Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be available.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Models with Display Audio

Allow you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the driver information interface.



▲ ▼ Buttons

Press ▲ or ▼ to cycle through the audio mode as follows:

FM→AM→SiriusXM®*→USB→iPod →*Bluetooth*® Audio→Pandora®*→Apps* →Audio Apps*

ENTER Button

- When listening to the radio and SiriusXM®*

1. From the audio screen in the driver information interface, press **ENTER** to switch the display to a preset list you stored in the preset buttons.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a preset, then press **ENTER**.

- When listening to a USB flash drive

1. From the audio screen in the driver information interface, press **ENTER** to display the folder list.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a folder.
3. Press **ENTER** to display a list of tracks in that folder.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a track, then press **ENTER**.

You can also swipe up or down to scroll through the list of tracks alphabetically.

Audio Remote Controls

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.
Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be available.

Press the (Hang-up/back) button to go back to the previous command or cancel a command.

Press the (Display/information) button to switch display.

Switching the Display P. 261

Features

* Not available on all models

• When listening to an iPod

1. From the audio screen in the driver information interface, press **ENTER** to display the iPod music list.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a category.

3. Press **ENTER** to display a list of items in the category.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select an item, then press **ENTER**.

▶ Press **ENTER** and press ▲ or ▼ repeatedly until the desired mode you want to listen to is displayed.

You can also swipe up or down to scroll through the list of tracks alphabetically.

• When listening to Pandora®*

1. From the audio screen in the driver information interface, press **ENTER** to display the station list.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select an item, then press **ENTER**.

• When listening to *Bluetooth*® Audio

1. From the audio screen in the driver information interface, press **ENTER** to display the track list.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a track, then press **ENTER**.

+ − (Volume) Bar

Press +: To increase the volume.

Press −: To decrease the volume.

Swipe down quickly to mute the volume or swipe up to cancel the mute.

* Not available on all models

Continued

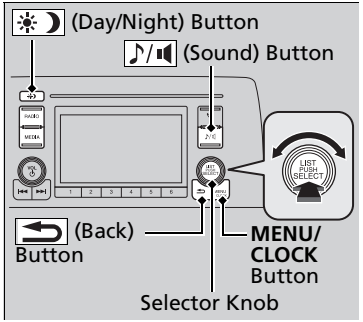
◀ ▶ Buttons

- When listening to the radio
  Press ▶: To select the next preset radio station.
  Press ◀: To select the previous preset radio station.
  Press and hold ▶: To select the next strong station.
  Press and hold ◀: To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to an iPod, USB flash drive, or *Bluetooth*® Audio
  Press ▶: To skip to the next song.
  Press ◀: To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- When listening to a USB flash drive
  Press and hold ▶: To skip to the next folder.
  Press and hold ◀: To go back to the previous folder.
- When listening to Pandora®*
  Press ▶: To skip to the next track.
  Press and hold ▶: To select the next station.
  Press and hold ◀: To select the previous station.

 * Not available on all models

Models with color audio system

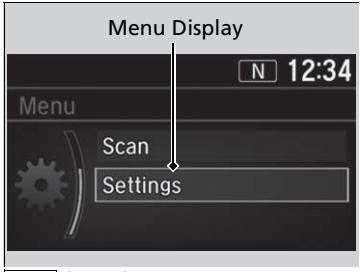
To use the audio system, the ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY I or ON II.



Use the selector knob or **MENU/CLOCK** button to access some audio functions.

Press to switch between the normal and extended display for some functions.

Selector knob: Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices. Press to set your selection.



MENU/CLOCK button: Press to select any mode.
The available mode includes the wallpaper, display, clock, language setup, and play modes. Play modes can be also selected from scan, random, repeat, and so on.

(Back) button: Press to go back to the previous display.
(Sound) button: Press to select the sound setting mode.
(Day/Night) button: Press to change the audio/information screen brightness.
Press the (Day/Night) button, then adjust the brightness using .

► Each time you press the (Day/Night) button, the mode switches between the daytime mode, nighttime mode and off mode.

Audio System Basic Operation

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.
Rotate to select.
Press to enter.

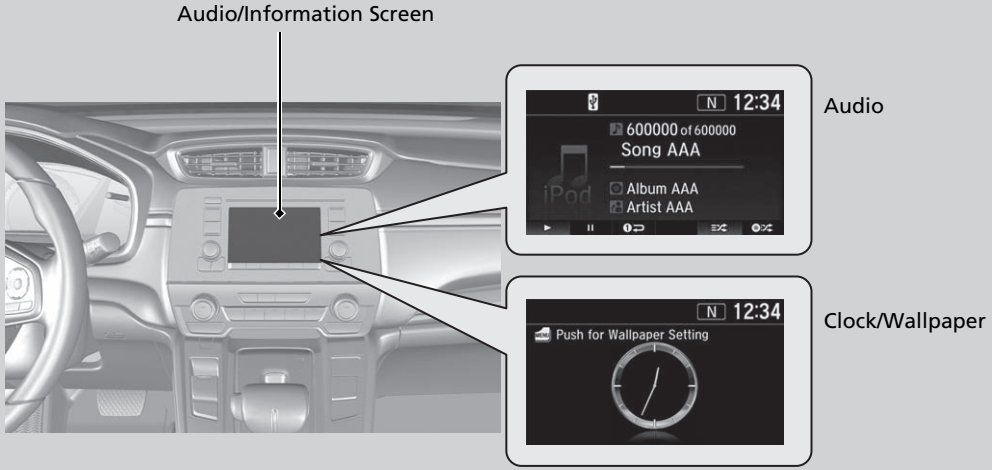
Menu Items
- **Adjust Clock** P. 132
- **Wallpaper Setup** P. 242
- **Display Setup** P. 245
- **Scan** P. 247, 255
- **Play Mode** P. 250, 255
- **RDS Settings** P. 247
- **Bluetooth** P. 256

Press the **SOURCE**, +, −, ◀ or ▶ button on the steering wheel to change any audio setting.
- **Audio Remote Controls** P. 235

Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.

■ Switching the Display



■ **Audio**
Shows the current audio information.

■ **Clock/Wallpaper**
Shows a clock screen or an image you import.

■ **Change display**
1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Settings**, then press ⊙.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select **Display Change**, then press ⊙.
4. Rotate ⟲ to select **Wallpaper**, then press ⊙.
▶ If you want to return to the audio/information screen, select **Audio**.

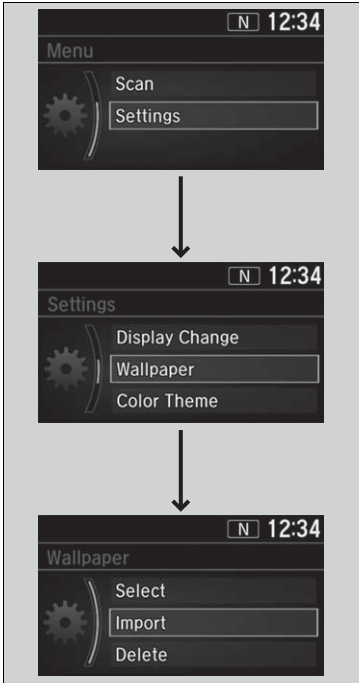
Continued

■ Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

■ Import wallpaper

You can import up to three images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.



1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
   USB Port(s) P. 233
2. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select **Settings**, then press ⊙.
4. Rotate ⟲ to select **Wallpaper**, then press ⊙.
5. Rotate ⟲ to select **Import**, then press ⊙.
   ▶ The picture name is displayed on the list.
6. Rotate ⟲ to select a desired picture, then press ⊙.
   ▶ The selected picture is displayed.
7. Press ⊙ to save the picture.
8. Press ⊙ to select **OK**.
9. Rotate ⟲ to select a location to save the picture, then press ⊙.
   ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper setting screen.

Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 64 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 2 MB.
- The maximum image size is 1,920 x 936 pixels. If the image size is less than 480 × 234 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- Up to 255 files can be selected.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the error message appears.
- The wallpaper setup is limited while driving.

■ **Select wallpaper**

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Select**, then press .
▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
5. Rotate to select a desired wallpaper, then press .

■ **To view wallpaper once it is set**

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Display Change**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
5. Press the (Back) button until the top screen is displayed.

■ **Delete wallpaper**

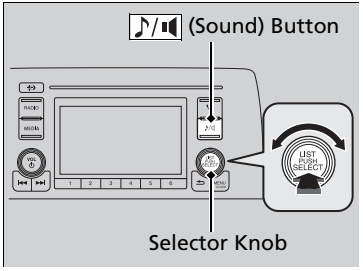
1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Delete**, then press .
▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
5. Rotate to select a wallpaper that you want to delete, then press .
6. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
▶ The display will return to the wallpaper setting screen.

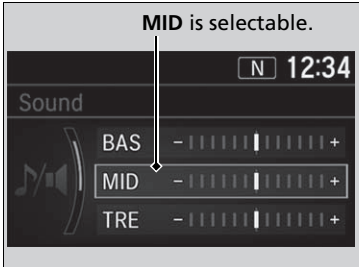
Wallpaper Setup

To go back to the previous screen, press the (Back) button.

When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

Adjusting the Sound





Press the (sound) button, and rotate to scroll through the following choices:

- **BAS** — Bass
- **MID** — Middle
- **TRE** — Treble
- **FAD** — Fader
- **BAL** — Balance
- **SVC** — Speed-sensitive Volume Compensation

Rotate to adjust the sound setting, then press .

Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **Off**, **Low**, **Mid**, and **High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

Display Setup

You can change the brightness or color theme of the audio/information screen.

Changing the Screen Brightness



1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Display Adjustment**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Brightness**, then press .
5. Rotate to adjust the setting, then press .

Changing the Screen's Color Theme

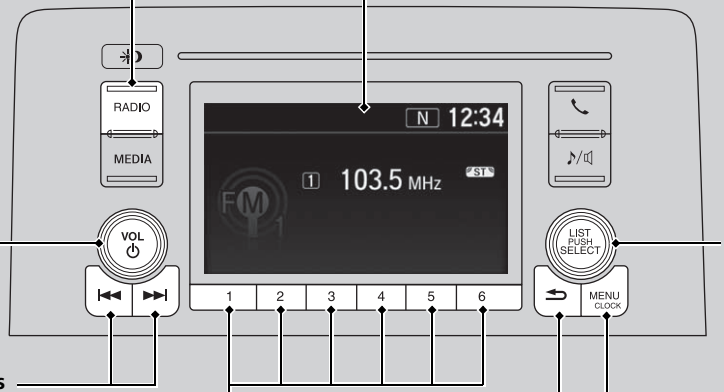


1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Color Theme**, then press .
4. Rotate to select the setting you want, then press .

Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

Playing AM/FM Radio



RADIO Button
Press to select a band.

Audio/Information Screen

VOL/⏻ (Volume/Power) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

⏮ / ⏭ (Seek/Skip) Buttons
Press ⏮ or ⏭ to search up and down the selected band for a station with a strong signal.

Preset Buttons (1-6)
To store a station:
1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Pick a preset button and hold it until you hear a beep.

To listen to a stored station, select a band, then press the preset button.

Selector Knob
Turn to tune the radio frequency.
Press, and then turn to select an item. After that, press again to make your selection.

MENU/CLOCK Button
Press to display the menu items.

⮌ (Back) Button
Press to go back to the previous display or cancel a setting.

■ Radio Data System (RDS)

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS capable FM station.

■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Press ⏻ while listening to an FM station.
2. Rotate ↻ to select the station, then press ⏻.

■ Update List

Updates your available station list at any time.
1. Press ⏻ while listening to an FM station.
2. Rotate ↻ to select **Update List**, then press ⏻.

■ Radio text

Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.
1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate ↻ to select **Settings**, then press ⏻.
3. Rotate ↻ to select **RDS Settings**, then press ⏻.
4. Rotate ↻ to select **Radio Text**, then press ⏻.

■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.
1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate ↻ to select **Scan**, then press ⏻.

To turn off scan, press ⏻.

Playing AM/FM Radio

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.
Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into the preset memory. FM1 and FM2 let you store 6 stations each.

Switching the Audio Mode
Press the **SOURCE** button on the steering wheel.
➡ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 235

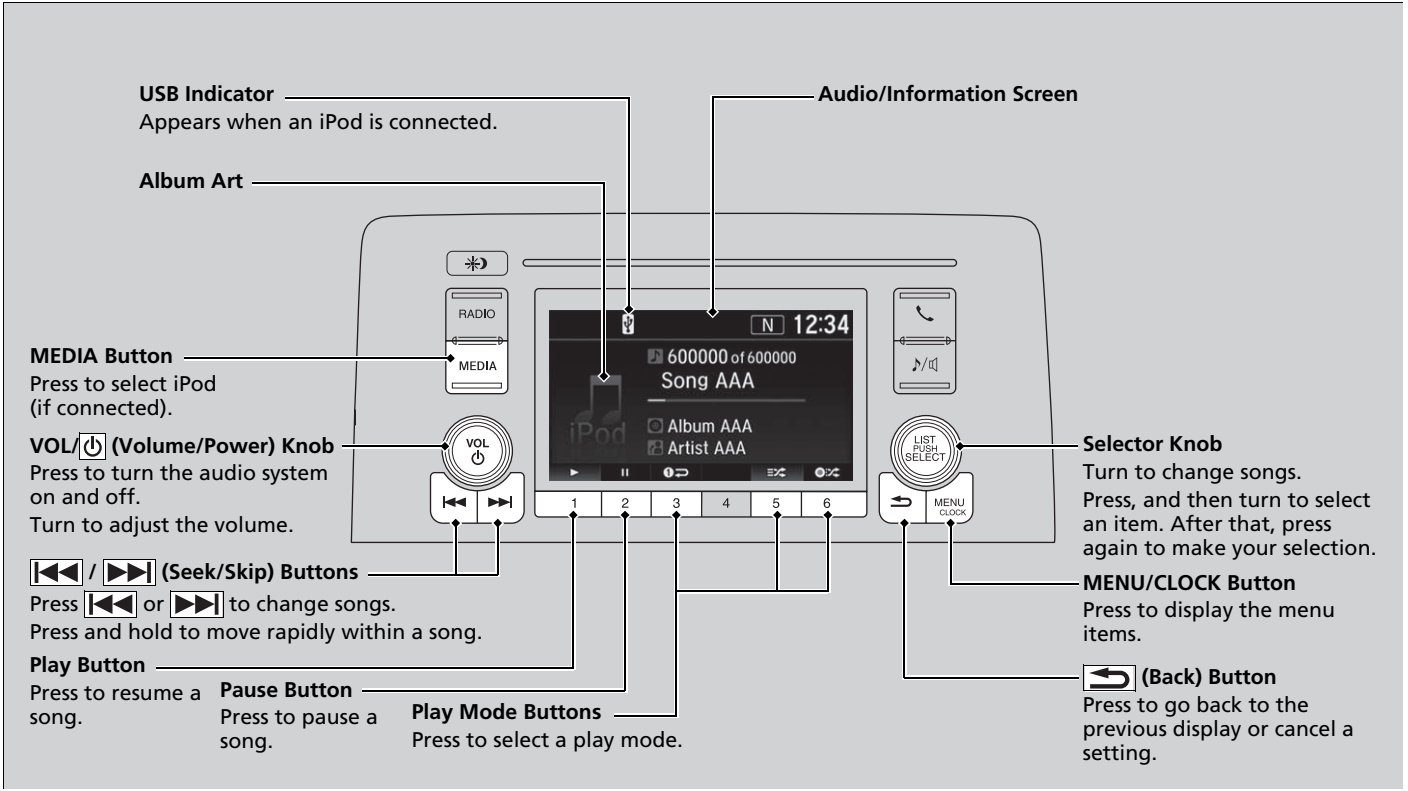
Radio Data System (RDS)

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

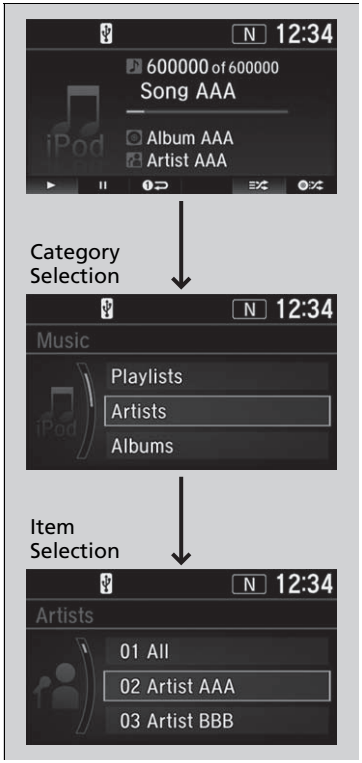
Playing an iPod

Connect the iPod using your dock connector to the USB port, then press the **MEDIA** button.

USB Port(s) P. 233



How to Select a Song from the iPod Music List with the Selector Knob



1. Press to display the iPod music list.

2. Rotate to select a category.

3. Press to display a list of items in the category.

4. Rotate to select an item, then press .
▶ Press and rotate repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

Continued

Playing an iPod

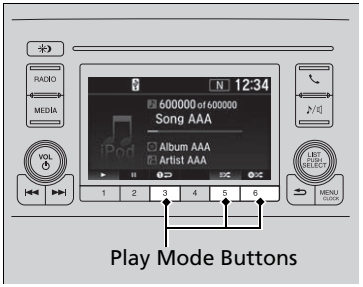
Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

➡ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 329

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a song.



Available mode icons appear above the play mode buttons.

Press the button corresponding to the mode you want to select.

■ To turn off a play mode

Press the selected button.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Shuffle Albums: Plays all available albums in a selected category (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or podcasts, audiobooks, and composers) in random order.

Shuffle All: Plays all available songs in a selected category (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, podcasts, audiobooks, and composers) in random order.

Repeat One Track: Repeats the current song.

You can also select a play mode by pressing the **MENU/CLOCK** button.

Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .

Rotate to select a mode, then press .

To turn it off, rotate to select **Normal Play**, then press .

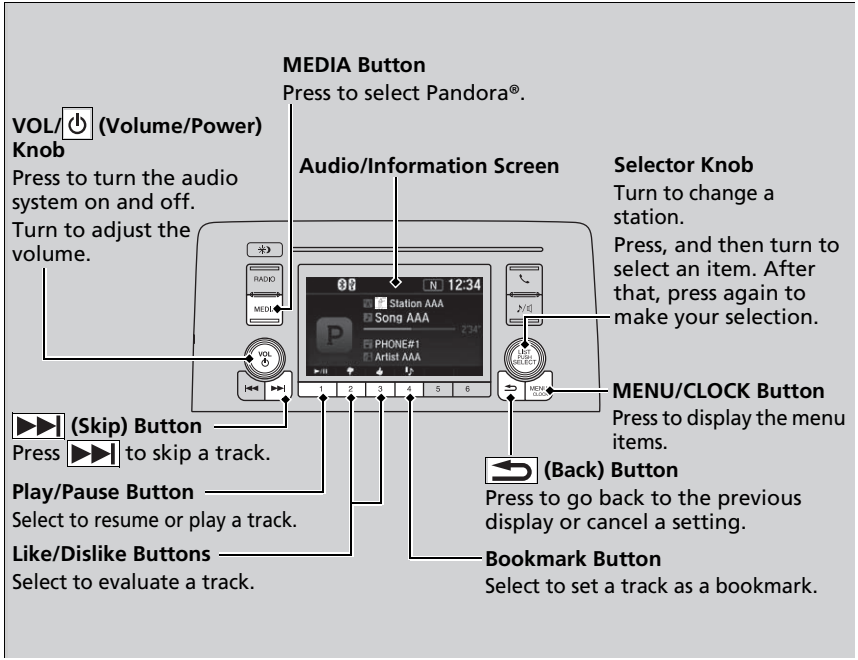
Playing Pandora®

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from the Pandora® app on a compatible smartphone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system, or with an iPhone, you can connect using your USB cable to the USB port.

Phone Setup P. 393

USB Port(s) P. 233



Playing Pandora®

Pandora®, the Pandora logo, and the Pandora trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of Pandora Media, Inc., used with permission. Pandora is only available in certain countries. Visit the Pandora website for more information.

To find out if your phone is compatible with this feature, visit *automobiles.honda.com/handsfreelink/*, or call 1-888-528-7876.

To use this service in your vehicle, the Pandora® app must first be installed on your phone. Visit *www.pandora.com*. for more information.

Pandora® is free, personalized radio that plays music and comedy you'll love. Just start with the name of one of your favorite artists, tracks, comedians or composers and Pandora® will create a custom station that plays similar tracks. Pandora® also features hundreds of genre stations ranging from Dubstep to Smooth Jazz to Power Workout.

If you cannot operate Pandora® through the audio system, it may be streaming through *Bluetooth*® Audio. Make sure Pandora® mode on your audio system is selected.

Continued